SYSTEMATICS OF THE SOUTHERN AFRICAN SPECIES OF <u>CAREX</u> U. (CYPERACEAE)

Randonsted with distinction 30 April 1991.

A Dissertation Submitted to the Faculty of Science University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg for the Degree of Master of Science

Johannesburg 1991

Glare Reid

HALF MARINE MARINE .

all allered denorations all allered a

-

The southern African species of Carex L. are revised. Characters and character states are analyzed for habitat, macros and micromorphology and seeing, The results of this study are presented in eleven tables, twelve photographic plates and three figures. Keys to the Taxa and descriptions for each are generated from the character list, utilizing DELTA. A schematic classification of the genus is included. Sixteen species are recognized, including a new species, C. acocksii C. Reid, from the Hantamsberg, Calvinia district. An adventive species, <u>C. sylvatica</u> Huds., is here newly recorded. A putative hybrid, <u>C. spicato-paniculate</u> C.B. Cl. X C. zuluensis C.B. Cl., is discussed. Five names, C. merxmuelleri Podlech, <u>C. schlechteri</u> Nelmes, <u>C. leribensis</u> Nelmes, <u>C. cognata</u> Kunth var. <u>drakensbergensis</u> (C.B. Cl.) Kuekenth. and <u>C. aethiopica</u> Schkuhr var. latisvica C.B. Cl are here newly placed into synonymy. Nomenclature and typification for each taxon is discussed and distribution maps for each are provided. A distribution may indicating the number of species occurring per geographical degree square in southern Africa is included.

BSTRACT

DECLARATION

I declare that this dissertation is my own, unaided work. It is being submitted for the degree of Master of Science at the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg. It has not been submitted before for any pegree or examination in any other Mmiversity.

day of Janvary

· 19 2:

blac Reid

Eleventh

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

My employers, National Botanical Institute, are thanked for allowing me to work part-time on this project. All colleagues who gave advice and instruction in techniques are thanked, in particular Mrs S.M. Perold and Dr. H.F. Glen (SEM), Mrs A. Botha (wax-embedding and microtoming) and Dr. G.E. Gibbs Russell (DELTA). Mrs A. Romanowski is thanked for all the printing of photographs, rephotographing of plates and for the photographs for Plate 1. Dr. M.L. Frean (University of the Witwatersrand) is thanked for the instruction in resin-embedding and for cutting sections on the ultramicrotome. Finally my friend and supervisor, Dr. K. Balkwill, is thanked for his enthusiastic interest in the project and for painstaking checking at every stage of text production.

LIST OF CONTENTS

																												1	6	í
	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	1	•	•		•	•	1	Ĩ.		I		

Page

DECLARATION	• • • • •	• • •	 • • • • •	• • • • •	 •••••	iii
ACKNOWLEDGEM	IENTS	• • •	 	• • • • •	 	iv

ABSTRACT

.

Chapter 1. INTRODUCTION

э.	<u>Carex</u> in southern Africa - the problems	-1
2.	Classification of <u>Carex</u>	3
2.1.	The Tribe Cariceae	3
3.	Important collectors of the genus in southern	
	Africa	8
4	General phytogeography and habitat of Carex.	11

Chapter 2. HABITAT AND MACROMORPHOLOGICAL CHARACTERS

Α.	INTRODUCTION	17
Β.	MATERIALS AND METHODS	17
с.	GENERAL STUDY OF CHARACTERS	20
D.	CHARACTERS STUDIED IN DETAIL	20
	1. <u>Habitat</u>	20
	2. <u>Vegetative</u>	21
	3. <u>Inflorescence Structure</u>	22
	3.1. <u>Glossary of Descriptive Terms for</u>	
	Inflorescence, Spikelets and Flowers	23
Ε.	RESULTS OF GENERAL STUDY OF CHARACTERS	25
F.	RESULTS OF CHARACTERS STUDIED IN DETAIL	26
	1. Habitat	26

.

	2.	Vegetative	26
	3.	Inflorescence Structure	27
;.	GENER	AL DISCUSSION	29
ι.	DISCU	SSION OF CHARACTERS STUDIED IN DETAIL	29
	1.	<u>Habitat</u>	29
	2.	Vegetative	50
	3.	Inflorescence Structure	32
	CONCL	<u>USTONS</u>	35

1

Chapter 3. MICROMORPHOLOGICAL CHARACTERS

•	INTRO	DUCTION	45
•	MATER	LALS AND METHODS	45
	RESUL	<u>TS</u>	47
	1.	Leaf Lamina Surface	47
	1.1.	General description of the southern African	
		species	47
	1.2.	Characters that distinguish the species	49
1	2.	Perigynium Morphology	50
	3.	Perigynium Surface	51
	4. 8.	Bostrum and Style Morphology	52
	5.	Nutlet Morphology	53
	6.	Nutlet Surface	54
	7.	Acetolyzed Nutlet Surface	55
	7.1.	General description of the southern African	
		<u>species</u>	55
	7.2.	Characters that distinguish the species	56

D.	DISCU	<u>SSION</u>	57
	1.0*	Leaf Lamina Surface	57
	7 .	Intimute Forphology	58
	3.	Perigynium Surface	58
	4.	Rostrom and Style Morphology	59
0	5.	Nutlet Morphology	60
	6.	Nutlet Surface	61
	7.	Acetolyred Nutlet Syrface	61
E .	CONCL	USIONS	62

B Make a. o is 11 at 11

6 . N. .

a. All the rate resultation States after a during a second

Chapter 4. ANATOMICAL CHARACTERS

Α.	INTRO	DUCTION	75
в.	MATER	IALS AND METHODS	76
с.	RESUL	<u>TS</u>	77
	1.	Lamina Transverse Section	71
	1.1.	General description of the southern African	
		species	77
	1.2.	Characters that distinguish the species	79
	2.	<u>Culm Transverse Section</u>	81
	2.1.	General description of the southern African	
		<u>species</u>	81
	2.2.	Characters that distinguish the species	83
D.	DISCU	<u>SSION</u>	84
Ε.	CONCLU	<u>USIONS</u>	86

Chapter 5. <u>TAXONOMIC TREATMENT</u>

۱.	GENERIC DESCRIPTION		32
----	---------------------	--	----

B. KEYS TO THE SPECIES	. 98
1. Key utilizing macromorphological characters	
("DELTA"-derived)	. 98
2. Key utilizing mainly characters of perigymium	
(hand-written)	. 102
C. ENUMERATION OF TAXA	
1. <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> C.B. Cl	. 106
Futative hybrid: <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> C.B. Cl. X	
<u>C. zuluensis</u> C.B. Cl,	. 114
2. <u>C. zuluensis</u> C.B. Cl	117
3. <u>C. dívisa</u> Huds	. 123
4. <u>C. glomerabilis</u> Krecz	. 731
5. <u>C. austro-africana</u> (Kuekenth.) Raymond	. 141
6. <u>C. mossii</u> Nelmes	. 149
7. <u>C. aethiopica</u> Schkuhr	. 155
8. <u>C. sylvatica</u> Huds	. 162
9. <u>C. burchelliana</u> Boeck	. 165
10. <u>C. ecklonii</u> Nees	. – 170
11. <u>C. monotropa</u> Nelmes	. 175
12. <u>C. cognata</u> Kunth	. 180
13. <u>C. acutiformis</u> Ehrh	. 189
14. <u>C. clavata</u> Thunb	. 197
15. <u>C. subinflata</u> Nelmes	. 205
16. <u>C. sp. nov.</u> (<u>C. acocksii</u> C. Reid)	. 210
D. EXCLUDED TAXA	. 214

v111

APPENDICES

	1.	Specimen and phytogeographical data.	
	1.1.	List of specimens seen	218
	1.2.	List of species collected in each degree square	
		in southern Africa	235
	2.	"DELTA" data.	
	2.1.	Character list	238
2	2.2.	Items list	253
	2.3.	Tabular key	259
	3.	Methods.	
	3.1.	Critical point drying	261
	3.2.	Acetolysis of <u>Carex</u> fruits	262
	3.3.	Preparation of permanent transverse sections of	
		leaves and culms	263
	3.4.	Preparation of material for the ultramicrotome	265
	3		
	REFE	<u>ences</u>	267

INDEX OF CURRENT NAMES AND SYNONYMS 279

ix

LIST OF TABLES, PLATES, FIGURES AND DISTRIBUTION MAPS

		Page
Table 1.	Habitat of the southern African species of	
	<u>Carex</u> L	37
Table 2.	Macromorphological characters of vegetative	
	organs that distinguish the southern African	
	species of <u>Carex</u> L	38
Table 3.	Description of the inflorescence in the	
	four subgenera of <u>Carex</u> L	39
Table 4.	Macromurphological characters of the	
	inflorescence that distinguish the	
	southern African species of <u>Carey</u> L	40
Table 5.	Macromorphological characters of the	
	spikelet bracts and staminate spikelets that	
	distinguish the southern African species of	
	<u>Carex</u> L	41
Table 6.	Macromorphological characters of the	
	perigynium that distinguish the southern	
	African species of <u>Carex</u> L	42
Table 7.	Macromorphological characters of the	
	gynoecium and fruits that distinguish the	
	southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L	43
Table 8.	Micromorphological characters of the leaf	
	lamina that distinguish the southern African	
	species of <u>Carex</u> L	64
Table 9.	Micromorphological characters of acetolyzed	
	fruits that distinguish the southern African	

b.

x

	species of <u>Carex</u> L	65
Table 10.	Anatomical characters of the leaf lamina	
	that distinguish the southern African	
	species of <u>Carex</u> L	87
Table 11.	Anatomical characters of the culm that	
	distinguish the southern African species of	
	<u>Carex</u> L	85
	and the second	
Plate 1.	Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.:	
	Inflorescence morphology of the four	
	subgenera	44
Plate 2.	Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.:	
	Scanning Electron Micrographs of leaf lamina	
	epidermides	66
Plate 3.	Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.:	
	Scanning Electron Micrographs of leaf lamina	
	epidermides	67
Plate 4.	Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.:	
	Scanning Electron Micrographs of leaf lamina	
	epidermides	68
Plate 5.	Southern African species of Carex L.:	
	Scanning Electron Micrographs of perigynia.	69
Plate 6.	Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.:	
	Scanning Electron Micrographs of perigynia.	70
Plate 7.	Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.:	
	Scanning Electron Micrographs of perigynia	
	and fruits	71

xi

Plate 8. Southern African species of Carex L.:	
Scanning Electron Micrographs of fruits and	1
acetolyzed fruits	. 72
Plate 9 Southern African species of Carex L.:	
Seconding Flectron Michaeranhs of fruits and	
Scanning Election Altrographs of fidits and	73
Blace 10 Southern Administration approved of Caroy L	. 15
Plate IV. Southern Airican species of <u>Larex</u> L.:	
Scanning Electron Micrographs of fruits am.	
acetolyzed fruits.	- 14
Plate 11. Southern Africa Ignnies of <u>Carex</u> L.:	
Transverse sections of lenf laminae	. 90
Mate 12. Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.:	
Transverse sections of culms	. 91
Fig. 1. Classification of <u>Garex</u> L. (schematic)	:4
Fig. 2. Diagrams to show spikelet structure in <u>Cares</u>	<u>r</u>
L	15
Fig. 3. Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.:	
Illustrations of rhizome types	36
Fig. 4. Plan diagrams of anatomical structure in	
<u>Carex</u> L	89
Map 1. Number of <u>Carex</u> species ver geograph cal	
degree square in southern frica	16
Map 2. Distribution of <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> C.B. C	1. /
in southern Africa	
Nap 3. Distribution of <u>C. zuluensis</u> C.B. Cl. in	

xii

		The second se	
		southern Africa (dots) and of a putative	
		hybrid: <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> C.B. Cl. X <u>C.</u>	
		zuluensis C.B. Cl. (square)	116
Map 4	•	Distritution of <u>C. divisa</u> Huds. in southern	
		Africa	130
Map 5		Distribution of <u>C. glomerabilis</u> Krecz. is	
		southern Africa	130
Map 6	. 4	Distribution of <u>C. austro-africana</u> (Kuekenth.)	
		Raymond in southern Africa.	148
Map 7		Distribution of Constil Nulmes in Southern	
map /	•	Africa	148
		AIrica	.40
Map 8	•	Distribution of <u>C. aethiopica</u> Schkuhr in	
		southern Africa	161
Map 9	•	Distribution of <u>C. sylvatica</u> Huds. in southern	
		Africa	161
Map 1	0.	Distribution of <u>C. burchelliana</u> Boeck. in	
		southern Africa	169
Map 1	1.	Distribution of <u>C. ecklocii</u> Nees in southern	
		Africa	169
Map 1	2.	Distribution of <u>C. monotropa</u> Nelmes in	
		southern Africa	179
Map 1	3.	Distribution of <u>C. cognata</u> Kucch in southern	
		Africa	179
Map 1	4	Distribution of <u>C. acutiformis</u> Ehrh. in	
		couthern Africa	196
	E	Distribution of C clausts Thunh in couthern	
нар І		Distrigution of <u>C. Clavata</u> induo, in Southern	104
		AIrica	130

xiii

Map	16.	Distribution of <u>c</u>	
		southern Africa	209
Map	17.	Distribution of sp. nov. in southern Africa.	209

CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

1. Carex in southern Africa - the problems

Since Linnaean times caricologists have concentrated on the production of inventories or monographs of the taxa of <u>Carex</u>, e.g. Schkuhr (1801 & 1806), Steudel (1840), Boott (1858--67), Boeckeler (1875--77) and many others. The most recent of these is Kuekenthal's 1909 monographic treatment of Caricoideae (in German), in which nearly 800 <u>Carex</u> species and many more varieties and forms (as well as hybrids) are recognized. Although this type of treatment is extremely valuable for many purposes, it is difficult to identify the species of a defined geographical area (due to very lengthy keys!) or to extract information about local characters and their variation - hence the necessity for regional treatments.

For the major part, regional African floras in which <u>Carex</u> is treated have not yet been published. Clarke, working overseas with limited material, provided a basic treatment of the southern African species in Flora Capensis (1898). Subsequent authors such as Nelmes (1940--55b) attempted to clarify the names and delimititations of these taxa, but the work was only partially completed. It is obvious that there is a need for a modern systematic treatment of the genus in the southern African region.

One of the major problems in the nomenclature of <u>Carex</u> is the absence of typitication of names, compounded by the absence of critical characters in the original descriptions. This has led to the misapplication of names to somehern African taxa and proliferation of synonymy. In an attion specimens that lack information (e.g. very young material) have been misidentified throughout history. A lack of understanding of the significance of exact locality and habitat has also caused misidentification or confusion of taxa. Recently, improved tools and techniques and more adequate amounts of good herbarium material have become available, enabling better taxonomic judgements to be made.

There is a large amount of recent "beta"-taxonomic literature relating to the northern hemisphere representatives of the genus <u>Carcx</u> (e.g. Bruederle <u>et al.</u>. 1989). Apart from the basic principles involved, which are applicable to both "alpha"- and "beta"-taxonomy, this literature has little relevance to the present study, which is of necessity "alpha"-taxonomic in nature.

The aim of this study, therefore, is to provide a modern taxonomic revision of the southern African representatives of the genus <u>Carex</u>, utilizing many modern tools and techniques (i.e. use of the Scanning Electron Microscope, and computer-generated keys and descriptions). Other tools and techniques, e.g. cladistic analysis, palynology and cytology were not utilized.

2. <u>Classification of Carex</u>

Cyperaceae is a large family, comprising about 70 genera and 3 700 species (Schultze-Motel, 1980). Characters of the family are discussed in detail by Kern (pp. 435--452, 1974) and summarized in Dahlgren, Clifford & Yeo (1985); the family is usually divided into two sub-families, Cyperoideae and Caricoideae (Kern, 1974), mainly on the basis of reproductive characters. Sub-family Cyperoideae contains the tribes Hypolytreae, Cypereae (including Scirpeae', and Rhynchosporeae, while Sub-family Caricoideae contains the tribes Sclerieae and Cariceae. (There are in reality almost as many different classifications as there are researchers in Cyperaceae, e.g. frequently Sclerieae is placed in its own Sub-family, Sclerioideae (Reznicek, 1990).) Carex is placed in Tribe Cariceae, together with Schoenoxiphium Nees, Kobresia Willd. and Uncinia Pers., as well as a few monotypic genera which are not always recognized (Nelmes, 1952; Kern, 1974). Fig. 1 is a schematic representation of this classification. The subgenera as recognized by Kuekenthal (1909) are also indicated in Fig. 1. These subgenera are also controversial and frequently authors (e.g. Reznicek, 1990) recognize only three, with the species of Subgenus Primocarex being placed within Subgenus Carex.

2.1. The Tribe Cariceae

This tribe is chiefly characterized by extremely reduced, unisexual flowers lacking a perianth, and by the

occurrence of the perigynium (utriculus).

The pistillate flower is represented by a solitary, naked gynoecium, subtended by two structures, a perigynium and a glume-like bract (Fig. 2b and c). The perigynium, which is of extreme taxonomic importance, was shown by Yunth (1835) to be a single modified prophyll rather than a perianth, and is therefore extrafloral. (He also suggested that the perisynium is derived from two fused bracts, but this theory has since been discarded (Smith & Faulkner, 1976).) The prophyllar theory is upheld by many recent authors ve.g. Snell, 1936; Blaser, 1944; Smith & Faulkner, 1976; Haines & Lye, 1983), mainly on anatomical and teratological evidence. In Cyperaceae the first "leaf" cf every lateral inflorescence branch is generally a bicarinate (two-keeled) prophyll (Kern, 1974). The size, texture and ne vation may vary, depending on the order and position of the branch and whether the prophyll is exposed, or concealed by the sheath of the opposing bract. It has been fairly conclusively shown (Snell, 1936) that the individual pistillate and staminate spikelets are themselves reduced branches, thus confirming Kunth's original conclusion. This theory of the nature of the perigynium is upheld in the present study. Hereafter the prophyll, except where it is modified as a perigynium, is referred to as a bracteole, because it is adaxial to a bract.

The perigynium may be open and bract-like in some <u>Kubresia</u> species, partially closed in some <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> species, or completely closed (thus enclosing the pistillate flower, with an orifice through which the stigmas are exserted) in <u>Carex</u> and <u>Uncinia</u> and in the presumably more advanced members of the former two genera. In these taxa the fruit and perigynium together comprise the disseminule.

The staminate flowers throughout the tribe have large exserted anthers (typical of anemophilous plants); each is subtended by a glume-like bract (Fig. 2d and e).

Bisexual spikelets occur frequently in Schoenoxiphium and Kobresia. but are rare in Carex and Uncinia, and in Carex are interpreted as teratological in origin (Smith & Faulkner, 1976). Thus, the two genera represented in Africa, namely Carex and Schoenoxiphium. are usually fairly easily distinguishable on sight. There are, however, a few species of Schoenoxiphium that bear unisexual single-flowered spikelets and are otherwise similar in facies to species of Carex in the Subgenus Indocarex. In these species of Schoenoxiphium there is a large flattened structure, which represents the rudimentary rhachilla of the staminate spikelet (Levyns, 1945), present within the perigynium. This structure is absent in Carex, apart from some easily identifiable species of Subgenus Primocarex. or sometimes in basal spikelets in the other two subgenera (Vignea and Carex). in which it is always a reduced filiform structure. Primocarex as construed by Kuekenthal is thought to be polyphyletic in origin (Nelmes, 1952; Reznicek, 1990), and many authors do not recognize it as a subgenus. Furthermore,

it is probable that at least some of the recently described southern African species that bear rhachillae should be transferred to <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> (Nelmes, 1952; Kukkonen, pers. comm.).

To summarize the above discussion, distinguishing characters of <u>Carex</u> are the unisexual, single-flowered spikelets, of which the individual pistillate spikelets comprise a gynoecium lacking a perigynium, and are usually unaccompanied by a rhachilla except in Subgenus <u>Primocarex</u>: each is subtended by two extrafloral structures, adaxially by a closed perigynium and abaxially by an open, glume-like bract; the individual staminate spikelets comprise an androecium, subtended by one extrafloral structure, an abaxially inserted glume-like bract.

Although <u>Carex</u> has been recognized as a taxon since antiquity (Robertson, 1979), generic delimitation in Cariceae has always been problematical. Since 1753 about 33 generic synonyms have been recorded within <u>Carex</u> itself (Hooker & Jackson, 1895; Kuekenthal, 1909). Fortunately they have never been applied to the southern African taxa with the exception of <u>C. divisa</u>. so they are not discussed, but are merely listed in the Systematic Section (Chapter 5). A number of southern African species that were placed in <u>Carex</u> by Clarke (1894, 1898), were subsequently transferred to <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> by Kuekenthal (1909). Although there is as yet no entirely satisfactory resolution of genera, Kuekenthal's decisions are upheld by Kukkonen (1963), who is

currently engaged in a systematic revision of the southern African species of <u>Schoenoxiphium</u>. For the purposes of this study it has been possible to reach agreement with Kukkonen on the problematical issue of generic limits between <u>Carex</u> and its apparent sister genus, <u>Schoenoxiphium</u>, applying the strict definition of <u>Carex</u> as discussed above. Future monographic studies of <u>Cariceae</u> may very well lead to a different circumscription of genera, but for the purposes of the present investigation the currently accepted generic concepts are upheld.

Authors prior to Kuekenthal (e.g. Boeckcler, 1975--77), formally or informally recognized a number of natural groupings within the genus. Kuekenthal (1909) formally divided Carex into four subgenera, 69 sections and many subsections. Unfortunately he did not designate ypes, and the names applied to these subdivisions. ...ng subject to the rules of the International Code of ...apical Nomenclature (Jermy & Tutin, 1968), still require typification. This is not attempted in the present study. Recent taxonomic literature has either ignored these subdivisions, and employed a different classification, or has concentrated on refining them (e.g. Crins & Ball, 1988), but the subdivisions remain controversial (Schultze-Motel, p. 98, 1980, and references therein) and are frequently retained as a matter of convenience rather than as a reflection of phylogeny. These subdivisions are listed in the Systematic Section (Chapter 5). The four subgenera

recognized by Kuckenthal are discussed in some detail in Chapter 2 because they directly reflect the four types of inflorescence structure that occur in <u>Carex</u>.

3. <u>Important collectors of the genus in southern Africa</u> Only two categories of people have collected <u>Carex</u> in

couthern African, namely:

(1) professional botamists, collectors and interested amateurs who methodically sampled the flors of particular areas, and

(2) travellers who collected and pressed whatever scraps they could, in the short time available to them. The third category of botanical collectors in southern Africa comprises people who were sent, usually by wealthy patrons, to search for species of horticultural interest. At that time Cyperaceae were considered to have no horticultural value (this is a possible reason for the existence of relatively few synonyms) and were generally avoided by these collectors. It is interesting to note that in recent years, with the increasing interest in "landscape gardening", a number of cultivars of <u>Carex</u> have become available in the nursery trade.

All the collectors of <u>Carex</u> are listed alphabetically in Appendix 1.1; they are discussed In detail in Gunn & Codd (1981) and Codd & Gunn (1985), so some of the first category only, are briefly mentioned here.

The earliest known southern African tares collactions

were made around 1772 in the winter rainfall area, by two Swedes who arrived independently at the Cape, A. Sparrman and the "Father of Cape Botany", C.P. Thunberg. Thunberg published the results of his Cape expeditions (1794, 1811, 1823), describing two <u>Carex</u> species, <u>C. clavata</u> and <u>C.</u> <u>clomerata</u> (a synonym of <u>C. glomerabilis</u> Krecz.) in 1794. A third species he described is now placed in <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> and a fourth species he described, <u>C. vesicaria</u>, is now regarded as a synonym of <u>C. clavata</u>. A fifth species, <u>C.</u> <u>nethionics</u>, was published by Schkuhr in 1801. The Thunberg specimens, many of which are types, are mostly at UPS, but are singularly uninformative regarding locality or habitat; they are also unavailable for loan purposes.

Between 1810 and 1815 the British naturalist, W. Burchell, travelled extensively in southern Africa, and recorded many well-documented localities for <u>Carex</u>. also collecting specimens of <u>C. burchellii</u>. published by Boeckeler in 1877. The specimens were donated to K in 1865.

J.F. Drège worked as a professional collector at the Cape, undertaking numerous expeditions between 1826 and 1834. With his numbers he collected many duplicates which were eventually sold to European herbarja; an alphabetical list of species, cross-referenced to the collecting localities, was published (Drège, 1843). Drège's numbering is somewhat confusing, as in his published account (Drège, 1843) the specimens are indexed by a very complicated system. Additionally the specimens were only numbered after Drège's return to Germany, and some numbers appear to have been duplicated. Several of his <u>Carex</u> specimens were described as new species (Kunth, 1837), but have subsequently been found to be synonymous with previously described taxa, or to be recent adventives. The sheets in K have collecting numbers added in what appears to be Clarke's handwriting.

C.F. Ecklon and C.L.P. Zeyher, botanical collectors, undertook several joint expeditions between 1829 and 1832, mainly to the south-western, southern and eastern Cape. During this time each also collected independently, and Zeyher collected independently prior to, and subsequent to, this period. Details of their itineraries are provided in Gunn & Codd (1981, appendix).

The German botanist F.R.R. Schlechter, while living at the Cape made several trips into the interior, between 1891 and 1898. His collection is one of the first major contributions to the study of the summer rainfall taxa.

In the latter part of the nineteenth century P. MacOwan, H. Bolus and J. Medley Wood, among others, were engaged in collecting activities in the eastern Cape, south-western Cape and Natal respectively. Much of their material was pooled in an exchange club known as the <u>Herbarium Normale</u> <u>Austro-Africanum</u>, and sets of specimens were sold to overseas herbaria.

At about the same time, and continuing into the early twentieth century, E.E. Galpin was collecting extensively,

mainly in the summer rainfall region; he also encouraged relatives and acquaintances to collect specimens in other parts of the country. Important collections were made in the Witteberg near Barkly East and in the mountains mear Barberton, which yielded many new species in several plant families, and included <u>Carux subinflata</u> Nelmes. Galpin's original specimens were donated to the National Herbarium, Pretoria (PRE) in 1916.

J.F.H. Acocks, who between 1916 and 1953 was engaged in surveying and mapping the vegetation of southern Africa, travelied the length and breadth of the country, discovering many new taxa and new records. He is to be commemorated in a, new species described in the present study. Acocks' original specimens are housed in the National Herbarium, Pretoria.

O.M. Hilliard (while based at Nata, University, Pietermaritzburg) and B.L. Burtt (Royal Botanic Gardens, Edinburgh) have in recent years jointly collected extensively in the southern Drakensberg in Natal, Lesothu and eastern Cape Province, making large population samples of the high-altitude summer rainfall taxa available for the present investigation.

4. General Phytogeography and Habitat of Cares

Cyperaceae are thought to have originated as lowland, forest-floor plants in the late Cretaceous or early Tertiary period and to have rapidly diversified into open, upland and subpolar regions (Ball, 1990). <u>Carex</u> is by far the largest

and most diverse genus of the family, containing about half the species (Reznicek, 1990). It is cosmopolitan, comprising 1 500--2 000 species worldwide (Willis, 1973). In a recent paper Ball (1990) discusses some aspects of the phytogeography and origins of <u>Carex</u> and of the three subgenera he recognizes. Such a study, as he clearly states, cannot be conclusive while the the inomy remained largely unresolved. Available phytogeographical evidence, however, indicates an early Tertiary origin (i.e. 65 million years ago (Raven & Axelrod, fig. 5, 1974)) for the genus, with the major groups being well-established and widely dispersed by the mid-Tertiary.

While its value as a natural part of wetland ecosystems is inestimable, the genus has known economic importance as pastarage (Catling, Reznikek & Crins, 1990), and the fruits as wildfowl feed, in the northern hemisphere, where there is a high concentration of species (119 recorded in "Illustrierte Flora von Mitteleuropa: Schultze-Motel, 1980; 180 recorded in Flora Europaea: Chater, 1980; 214 in northeastern United States: Gleason & Cronquist, 1963). The species occiency wide range of wet or moist habitats, and form a counterpart to the Poaceae of south temperate regions (Good, 1974). In the south temperate areas, species diversity and habitat range of the genus <u>Carex</u> is much restricted, so that during the present study only sixteen species have been recorded from southern Africa. The majority of these species are widely distributed within the

summer rainfall area, and some are cosmopolitan or vicariant tax. A number are apparently endemic to the region. Although there is some overlap of taxa, the winter rainfall spenies are generally quite different and much fewer in number (Map 1).

All of the southern African species occur on forest mar, its or in permanently marshy or moist areas. These eco ogically vulnerable abitats are disappearing due to mar, inal farming practices and urbanisation. According to herbarium records and to observations made in the field during the present investigation, individual plants are infiequent or even rare in populations of some species. Many former southern African <u>Carex</u> localities no longer exist (pers. obs.). It is therefore possible that some of the sou hern African species (i.e. those with very particular hab tat requirements) are "hreatened with extinction.



Fig. 1. Classification of <u>Carex</u> L. (schematic).



15

Fig. 2. Diagrams to show spikelet structure in <u>Carex</u> L. 1. Bisexual segment of ultimate inflorescence unit showing arrangement of spikelets on axis (diagrammatic) (after Dahlgren, Clifford & Yeo (1985)). 2. L/s of staminate spikelet (after Jermy & Tutin (1968)). 3. Floral diagram of staminate spikelet. 4. L/s of pistillate spikelet (<u>C. cognata</u>. <u>Reid 1210</u>) X 10. 5. Floral diagram of pistillate spikelet. b = bract of spikelet; p = perigynium; r = position of zhachilla.



Map 1. Number of <u>Carex</u> species per geographical degree square in southern Africa (see Appendix 1.2. for list of species). Solid line = eastern boundary of region that receives rainfall in winter. Dashed line = western boundary of region that receives rainfall in summer. The region between the two lines receives

rainfall in all seasons.

CHAPTER 2, HABITAT AND NACROMORPHOLOGICAL CHARACTERS

17

A. INTRODUCTION

The most recent treatments of the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> are Flora Capensis (Clarke, 1898), and Kuekenthal's monograph of the tribe Cariceae (1909). As discussed in Chapter 1, a relatively small amount of inadequately collected material was available to these researchers, leading to the utilization of problematical characters in the construction of keys and delimitation of species. This statement is borne out by the large quantity of misidentified material encountered during this study.

In the present study, previously constructed keys to taxa and descriptions of taxa have been replaced by entirely new ones, based on a more extensive character set. It was necessary to verify the identity of taxa by consulting type material.

B. MATERIALS AND METHODS

In order to obtain computer-generated identification keys and descriptions, a large number of qualitative and quantitative characters were recorded for habitat and macromorphological features. Characters that are normally recorded on labels, or are observable with the unaided eye or under an ordinary dissecting microscope were included.

The importance of characters for taxon delimitation was assessed in two ways Firstly by a study of both old and recent literature, in order to record all the characters that had been utilized in <u>Carex</u> by previous researchers. Literature references were verified in Stafleu & Cowan (1976--88). Secondly, a wide range of herbarium and live material was studied in order to establish how effectively these "traditional" characters delimited taxa, and also to search for additional useful characters. 18

Material, including type specimens, was borrowed from the following herbaria: B, RM, BOL, BUDW, GRA, K, MO, NBG, NH, NU, P, S, SAM, STE, TCD, Z: acronyms are according to Holmgren, Keuken & Schofield (1981). Material in J and PRE was examined <u>in situ</u>. Microfiche reproductions of the Thunberg herbarium, UPS, were examined at PRE.

Gunn & Codd (1°81), Stafleu & Cowan (1976--88) and Holmgren, Keuken and Schofield (1981) were used to determine locations of holotypes and potential lectotypes. Unfortunately all types of names in <u>Carex</u> that may have been housed in B have been destroyed. A photograph of the holotype of <u>C. aethiopica</u> Schkuhr was supplied by HAL. About ten years ago the types of the southern African species were removed from the main herbarium at K for photography (T.H. Arnold, pers. comm.). They have evidently not all been reincorporated as they were not all sent on loan during the present study, initially causing a different interpretation of typification. Fortunately the photographs (which include several of <u>Carex</u>) were recently examined at PRE, enabling the typification to be corrected. Greuter et al. (988) was used as a guide when determining nomenclature of the taxa. Author abbreviations are according to an unpublished list at PRE, which is based on Stafleu & Cowan (1976--88).

Measurements were made with the aid of a Nikon SMZ-2B stereo microscope and a fine steel rule, and were recorded for each specimen on a prepared "specdata" sheet. To obtain a reasonable assessment of taxonomic variability, wherever possible one specimen was measured for each geographical quarter-degree square from which the taxon was recorded. For each taxon the "specdata" were summarized on a prepared "taxdata" sheet corresponding to the list of characters presented in Appendix 2.

In addition field observations were made, to supply information which, as explained in Chapter 1, is usually inadequately recorded or absent from existing herbarium specimens. These included: a systematic study of habitat, habit, and morphological variability within populations of as many taxa as possible, plus the collection and preparation of herbarium specimens comprising whole plants, including the rootstock. Up to 10 duplicates were prepared, ensuring that these represented a population sample. Two long trips of several thousand kilometres were undertaken to the summer rainfall area (eastern Transvaal, Natal, eastern Cape Province) and to the winter rainfall area (southwestern and southern Cape Province) respectively. Short trips were made to some summer rainfall localities and an

additional trip was made to the Calvinia district, Cape Province, to collect a suspected new species. Pressed material and material preserved in FAA, of one taxon endemic to Lesotho (<u>C. monotropa</u> Nelmes) was collected by Dr. D.J.B. Killick. Material of three taxa was cultivated under mistspray at Pretoria Mational Botanic Gardeps.

Taxon distribution maps were plotted, using Leistner & Morris (1976) and : 250 000 topocadastral maps of southern Africa in order determine geographical grid references for specimen localities.

C. GENERAL STUDY OF CHARACTERS

All of the chiracters that were studied are listed in Appendix 2 and in Tables 1 to 11; they are mostly selfexplanatory, but some required a more intensive investigation: these are listed and discussed below (Sections D, F and H).

D. CHARACTERS STUDIED IN DETAIL

1. <u>Habitat</u>

Kuekenthal (pp. 10--21, 1909) presented a detailed analysis of the phytogeographical affinities of the 69 sections that he recognized. However, when a small number of individual species from a limited geographical area are analyzed, it appears to be more meaningful to compare types of habitat rather than phytogeographical regions. Referring to Map 1, it can be easily demonstrated that the

geographical degree square containing the greatest species diversity (i.e. 29°S 29°E), also contains the largest range of habitats suitable for <u>Carex</u>. ranging from alpine bog, through montane forests to montane marshland. This degree square receives rainfall _n summer.

For the relatively well-studied Britisn species of <u>Carex</u>, Jermy & Tutin (1968) list fourteen different types of habitat, ranging from "Sea-spray zone, brackish ditches, estuarine flats" to "Wet corries and ledges above 2 000 ft altitude". Each has a characteristic assemblage of species with very little overlap. Habitats of the southern African taxa were examined in a similar fashion, although in less detail, as chemical analyses of water and soils were not easily obtainable.

2. <u>Vegetative</u>

Kuekenthal (1909) and Jermy & Tutin (1968) summarize the vegetative characters of <u>Carex</u>. A similar character list was constructed for the southern African species.

In his key to the southern African species Clarke (1898) utilizes a number of vegetative characters, e.g. rhizome length is used to distinguish <u>C. divisa</u> Huds. from <u>C.</u> <u>Riomerabilis</u> Krecz. This character was studied to determine its usefulness in distinguishing chese two species, particularly because much of the material appeared to be misidentified.

For the British species Jermy & Tutin attach some

importance to rhizome growth type, distinguishing monopodial and sympodial systems. An explanation of these growth types is required here: In monopodial systems negatively geotropic shouts are produced, usually singly and abaxially, from nodes on the (ageotropic) rhizome, while in sympodial systems it is the apex of the (ageotropic) rhizome that becomes negatively geotropic, turning upwards and producing a shoot. At the base of this shoot one or a few buds are produced adventitiously; these develop into new (ageotropic) rhizomes, with their apices becoming negatively geotropic and producing shoots ... etc. The length of the rhizome in the sympodial growth type determines whether the plant will be caespitose or long-rhizomatous. These growth types are frequently recognizable on herbarium material: Monopodial types usually have straight rhizomes and sympodial types usually have "looping" rhizomes. These are illustrated in Fig. 3. The southern African species were examined to determine the usefulness of this character.

3. <u>Inflorescence Structure</u>

G

It has already been noted that inflorescence structure is the basis for subgeneric classification of <u>Carex</u>.

Some inflorescence characters previously utilized in keys included total size, number of branches and degree of branching. Recently (Haines & Lye, 1972; Kukkonen, 1984, 1986) inflorescence structure of a small number of species has been analyzed and discussed in detail, utilizing a very
complex terminology, which is specific to the particular subgenus and species studied, and is not flexible enough to accomodate slight variation due to ecological factors, also rendering very difficult a general comparison between species of different subgenera.

In the present study inflorescence structure was examined in detail: Firstly at subgeneric level, to ensure that the southern African taxa were correctly placed in their respective subgenera and that the subgenera were, at least for the present purposes, correctly delimited. Phylogenetic trends within the genus were also studied. Secondly inflorescence structure was studied at species level, to gain an impression of morphological variability within and between taxa. Comparative inflorescence structure was also studied in order to devise relatively simple descriptive terms which would be useful in constructing keys to and descriptions of the southern African taxa.

The distribution of staminate and pistillate spikelets within the inflorescence was examined in detail, because although this character has been widely used in keys (e.g. Clarke, 1898), it appeared to be rather variable and unreliable as a diagnostic character.

3.1. <u>Glossary of Descriptive Terms for Inflorescence</u>. <u>Spikelets and Plowers</u>

Accessory spike = small spike occurring at base of (usually basal) pistillate spike.

O

0

complex terminology, which is specific to the particular subgenus and species studied, and is not flexible enough to accomodate slight variation due to ecological factors, also rendering very difficult a general comparison between species of different subgenera.

In the present study inflorescence structure was examined in detail: Firstly at subgeneric level, to ensure that the southern African taxa were correctly placed in their respective subgenera and that the subgenera were, at least for the present purposes, correctly delimited. Phylogenetic trends within the genus were also studied. Secondly inflorescence structure was studied at species level, to gain an impression of morphological variability within and between taxa. Comparative inflorescence structure was also studied in order to devise relatively simple descriptive terms which would be useful in constructing keys to and descriptions of the southern African taxa.

The distribution of staminate and pistillate spikelets within the inflorescence was examined in detail, because although this character has been widely used in keys (e.g. Clarke, 1398), it appeared to be rather variable and unreliable as a diagnostic character.

3.1. <u>Glossary of Descriptive Terms for Inflorescence</u>. <u>Spikelets and Plowers</u>

Accessory mpike = small spike occurring at base of (usually basal) pistillate spike.

Androecious = male (alternative term for #minate). Androgynecandrous = spikelets of a single cx grouped

- together in a particular order from per, viz.
- staminate-pistillate-staminate. Refers to ultimate unit of inflorescence.

Androgynous = spikelets of a single sex grouped together in

a particular order from apex, viz. s in te-pistillate. Refers to ultimate unit of inflorescence.

Cladoprophyll = bracteole that is adaxial to bract that subtends primary units of inflorescence. Used by Kuekenthal (1909).

Clustered = descriptive of appearance of primary inflorescence units when internodes are very short. Coflorescence = alternative term for primary inflorescence

unit.

Diclinous = flowers unisexual i.e. stamens and pistils occur in separate flowers on the same plant.

Dimorphic = of two different forms. Refers especially to the bracts that subtend the spikelets in <u>C. acutiformis</u>, in which those of the staminate spikelets differ markedly from those of the pistillate spikelets.

Glor-rule = descriptive of ultimate inflorescence units of Subg. <u>Vignea</u> in which the ultimate axis is vertically compressed and thus the spikelets are very crowded. Gynecandrous = spikelets of a single sex grouped together in a particular order from apex, viz. pistillate-staminate. Refers to ultimate unit of inflorescence. Gynoecious = female (alternative term for pistillate).
Perigynium = modified bractecle that subtends and encloses
pistillate flower.

Pistillate = female. Refers to flower, spikelet, or to

ultimate unit of inflorescence (when unisexual). Primary inflorescence unit = first major division of

inflorescence, arising on main inflorescence axis. Includes an entire system of branches in paniculate inflorescences and = a spike in inflorescence types that comprise a raceme of spikes.

Protandrous = stamens ripen before pistils (in <u>Carex</u>, staminate flowers mature before pistillate flowers in inflorescence).

Rostrum = distal, usually drawn-out portion of perigynium. Staminate = male. Refers to flower, spikelet, or to ultimate unit of inflorescence (when unisexual).

Synflorescence ** alternative term for compound

inflorescence.

Ultimate inflorescence unit * final division of

inflorescence, that is subtended by a bract and

bracteoie. Refers to branch, glomerule or spike. Utricle = alternative term for perigynium.

E. RESULTS OF GENERAL STUDY OF CHARACTERS

Characters that are common to all the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> are listed in the generic description (Chapter 5). Characters with their component character states, that distinguish the southern African taxa are listed in Appendix 2 and in Tables 1, 2 and 4 to 7. These were utilized in th DELTA (DEscriptive Language for TAxonomy) computer programme generate keys to the species and descriptions thereof, presented in Chapter 5.

F. RESULTS OF CHARACTEP STUDIED IN DETAIL

1. Habitat

During fieldwork in some marshland areas, potential <u>Carex</u> sites could be recognized from a distance by the presence of large aquatic emergents e.g. <u>Typha</u> and <u>Phragmites</u> species in the summer rainfall area, and <u>Prionium</u> and <u>Carpha</u> species in the winter rainfall area, all of which signify the occurrence of perennial water.

Descriptions of habitat for each species are summarized in Table 1.

2. <u>Vegetative</u>

Vegetative characters that distinguish the southern African species are listed in Table 2. Diagnostic features are underlined.

With respect to rhizome length, population studies of G_{\pm} <u>slomerabilis</u> showed that this species frequently produced rhizomes as long as those of <u>C. divisa</u>, therefore this character did not effectively distinguish these two species.

Khizome growth (i.e. monopodial or sympodial) was not easily determinable in the majority of spendmens due to their being poorly collected. The specimens could, however, be categorized by the rather vague "caespitose" and "longrhizomatous", which are descriptive terms employed by most collectors when completing labels.

3. <u>Inflorescence Structure</u>

Inflorescence characters of the four subgenera are summarized in Table 3. Representatives of the four inflorescence types are depicted on Pl. 1.

Some previously utilized inflorescence characters included total size and number and degree of branching. In the field it was observed that plants growing in optimal conditions were robust, with correspondingly large, muchbranched inflorescences, while plants growing in less ideal conditions (e.g. the outer, drier margin of marshes) were depauperate, with small, few-branched inflorescences. After a relatively short period under mist-spray cultivation these depauperate plants were indistinguishable from herbarium specimens of robust plants of the same species (see discussion of <u>C. wuluensis</u>, Chapter 5).

It was also observed that in the larger species (e.g. <u>C.</u> <u>clavata</u> and <u>C. aethiopica</u>), robust plants produced inflorescences over a period of time during the flowering season. Early in the flowering season, inflorescences were produced on central shoots that had apparently developed towards the end of the previous growing season. A little later during the flowering season, further inflorescences were produced on sidu shoots that were apparently developed during the current growing season. The first inflorescence produced were much larger and more complexly branched than those that were produced later, on these side shoots. This latter type of inflorescence therefore resembled those that were produced on depauperate plants. In herbarium material there is no means of distinguishing these inflorescence types. Total size of inflorescence, plus number and degree of branching were therefore found to be rather variable within certain limits, and were clearly influenced by edaphic factors; this was confirmed by the results of the above population and cultivation studies.

Other previously utilized key and descriptive characters were found to be fairly constant within certain limits, even in depauperate specimens. These included the width of the ulti .te inflorescence units (branches or spikes).

Although distribution of staminate and pistillat spikelets had been widely used in keys, this character was also found to be rather variable. The amount of variability was to some extent dependent on the taxon under consideration.

Characters of the inflorescence and spikelets that distinguish the southern African species, are listed in Tables 4 and 5. Diagnostic features are underlined.

G. GENERAL DISCUSSION

The arrangement of taxa in Chapter 5 does not reflect a new classification scheme, being based upon that of Kuekenthal (1909), with some adjustments to the order of subgenera. In order to achieve a sound classification of the southern African species, sume form of cladistic analysis should be attempted. Although intuitive determination of polarities of some characters could be made, a much broader study (including as many foreign species as possible) would have been required to be certain of these polarities. There are also high levels of homoplasy within the genus, between different sections (Scandley, 1990). Determination of the outgroup at any level is also problematical. Crins (1990) recommends the use of character compatibility analysis of sentions in which the taxonomy is fairly stable, in order to overcome these difficulties.

N. DISCUSSION OF CHARACTERS STUDIED IN DETAIL

i. Habitat

Like their British counterparts, the southern African species were found to occupy very distinctive habitats. While not always diagnostic, it is clearly a very useful key and descriptive character.

If the results are compared with characters which function in dispersal, for example inflorescence structure and amount of inflation of the perigynium, it can be shown that the taxa are specifically adapted to particular

habitats. The forest-margin species, <u>C</u>, spicato-paniculata (Sutgenus Indocarex) and C. mossii (Subgenus Carex), both have uninflated perigynia. The former species has a paniculate inflorescence; the perigynia are equipped with a basal callus which appears to be glandular and may contain elaioscnes, suggesting dispersal of the fallen fruits by ants (see Kern p. 444, 1974). <u>C. mossii</u> has a very large pendulous inflorescence which produces vast numbers of small, light fruits; wind-action would cause dispersal by a censer-type mechanism. Both these dispersal strategies enuare that at least some of the fruits would be dispersed at some distance from the parent plant. Open-marshland species of Subgenus <u>Carex</u> (e.g. <u>C. clavata</u>) have muchinflated perigynia, and species of Subgenus Vignea (e.g. C. slomerabitis) have corky material present at the base of the perigynia. Both these character states are undoubtedly adaptations to water-dispersal.

2. <u>Vegetative</u>

Although providing many valuable characters for delimitation of taxa, for the present purposes vegetative characters were generally avoided in keys, except where used selectively as confirmatory characters. This decision was partly due to the extreme variability of quantitative characters e.g. leaf width. Many suitable (and more stable) inflorescence characters are available and very effectively distinguish the few southern African species. The decision

was also partly due to the abundance of poorly collected material in herbaria. In these specimens the inflor scence, at least, is usually present, therefore a key that utilizes mainly inflorescence characters is more satisfactory when identifying these plants.

Although rhizome length was found to be a potentially useful descriptive character, its use in keys was avoided due to the general incompleteness of herbarium material. This problem undoubtedly led to Clarke incorrectly distinguishing <u>C. divisa</u> and <u>C. glomerabili</u>, on rhizome length. Rhizome length in these two species is in fact very similar, providing evidence of their close relationship.

Rhizome growth type, another potentially useful character, has been omitted from this study, although preliminary investigations indicated that, in the southern African species at least, growth was monopodial in Subgenus <u>Vignea</u> and sympodial in the remaining subgenera. It should be noted that, while species with short rhizomes are usually rympodial, species with long rhizomes are either monopodial or sympodial. Thus the terms adopted in this study ("caespitose" and "long-rhizomatous") cut across those used by Jermy and Tutin (1968).

Vegetative characters of the southern African taxa are undoubtedly neglected. Bernard (1990) and Reznicek and Catling (1986), who studied North American species, discuss various vegetative characters, mainly with reference to the life histories of the irdividual plants. With similar

C

intensive field studies of the southern African taxa it would be possible to produce a key to the species employing only vegetative characters. This would be especially useful for ecological surveys, which are frequently carried out when plants are in the vegetative phase.

3. Inflorescirce Structure

The southern African taxa were found to be correctly placed in their respective subgenera as recognized by Kuekenthal. In Kuekenthal's classification Subgenus Princarez, with its unispicate inflorescences, is regarded as the most primitive, followed by Subgenus Vignea. Subgenus Indocarex and finally Subgenus <u>Carex</u>. Recent authors (Smith & Faulkner, 1976, and references therein) differ from Kuekenthal, generally agreeing that Subgenus Indocarex has the most primitive inflorescence form, and that Subgenus Vignea and Subgenus Carex are derived (probably independently) from it. The position of Subgenus Primocarex remains problematical, and it is frequently not recommized as a subgenus, but the species it contains are certainly not the most primit de. In the Taxonomic Section (Chapter 5) the southern African species are arranged more-or-less according to Kuekenthal, but with the order of subgenera re-arranged to reflect these recent views.

Smith & Faulkner (Fig. 5, 1976) showed that many of the differences in inflorescence structure between the subgenera "arise by variation in the relative degree of development of

the bract primordium and the two axes at female flower nodes; these axes are the main axis and the female flower primordium respectively".

It should be emphasised that for practical reasons modern treatments of <u>Carex</u> require comparison of structures which are almost certainly homologous (Snell, 1936). In the present study, the term "ultimate inflorescence unit" in fact refers to inflorescence units of different orders, for example in Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u> to a(n apparent) branch and in Subgenus <u>Carex</u> to a(n apparent) spike. Each individual spikelet has been shown (Chapter 1) to comprise a muchreduced branch, so that the spike in Subgenus <u>Carex</u> should more correctly be referred to as a pseudo-spike. Additionally, because the trend in specialized Cyperaccae appears to be towards reduction and simplification of the inflorescence (Kern, 1974), it seems likely, although not proven conclusively, that the spikelet in Subgenus <u>Carex</u> and the ultimate branch in Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u> are equivalent.

In an important recent paper Reznicek (1990) discusses the evolutionary development of the inflorescence with respect to the subgenera, in some detail, Interestingly, and for the same reason as stated above (i.e. to facilitate comparison of inflorescences between subgenera) he resorts to the use of Terminology very similar to that which has been developed for the present study.

Results of the population and cultivation study of inflorescences clearly showed that total size, plus number

of branches and degree of branching could not be employed as key characters or for taxon delimitation. Results of the study also influenced the decision to reduce a number of species to synonymy (see discussions of <u>C. zuluensis</u>, <u>C.</u> <u>rlomerabilis</u> and <u>C. cognata</u> in Chapter 5).

In a study that supports the above discussion and is also relevant to the study of distribution of staminate and pistillate spikelets, Smith (1967) found experimentally that manipulation of complementary levels of auxin and kinetin could lead to development of either a lateral spike, or a staminate or pistillate spikelet, depending on the relative levels of each hormone. In nature these levels of hormone are unavabtedly influenced by edaphic conditions, leading to variation in size of inflorescence, degree of branching, and various abnormalities in sexual expression. Use of characters describing distribution of staminate and pistillate spikelets was therefore avoided in keys. On the other hand, width of the ultimate inflorescence units proved to be a reliable key character.

Stigma number shows an interesting trend. The tristigmatic condition is clearly primitive, as it occurs throughout Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u>, in which a number of other primitive character states are evident. This condition also occurs in most memory of Subgenus <u>Carex</u> and Subgenus <u>Primocarex</u>. Although it is unclear how the distigmatic condition could be selectively advantageous, it has arisen in one section of Subgenus <u>Carex</u>, in some members of

Subgenus <u>Primocarex</u>, and occurs throughout Subgenus <u>Vignea</u>. Inflorescence structure in Subgenus <u>Vignea</u> is apparently a specialization of the panicle of Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u>. although it is not clear at which stage the distignatic condition, and the basal culm nodes arose. Similarly the inflorescence of Subgenus <u>Primocarex</u> is somewhat anomalous, as the single spike appears to be a reduction from the multiple spikes of Subgenus <u>Carex</u>, but the presence of the rhachilla is inferpreted as a primitive feature.

35

I. CONCLUSIONS

The study of a large amount of herbarium material and population samples showed that many macromorphological characters, which had previously been utilized in keys, were for various reasons not suitable for the purpose. There were numerous other characters, particularly those of the inflorescence and perigynium, which could be better utilized.

36

Fig. 3. Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Illustrations of rhizome types. Shoot scales and rhizome scales shaded.

O

 Rhizomes very short; sympodial growth system; plant caespitose (<u>C. cla ata. Reid 1129</u>) X 0,67.
 Rhizomes very long; sympodial growth system; plant not caespitose (<u>C. cognata. Reid 1187</u>) X 0,4.
 Rhizomes very short and very long in the same plant; sympodial growth system; plant forms a "tiller clump" (<u>C. acutiformis. Reid 1367</u>) X 0,5.
 Rhizomes very long; monopodial growth system; plant not caespitose (<u>C. glomerabilis. Reid 1148</u>) X 1.5.

Features	Subgenus	Indocares	Subgen	abgenus Vienes						Subgenus Carez					0	nds transve
	c. alt dat	S. Subarais	<u>C. divise</u>	C. elerralis	airs sala	C. mati	C. aethigica	<u>C. sylvatica</u>	C. burchellinna	C. ectionii	<u>C. manotropa</u>	C. consta	C. acutiforais	<u>C. clavata</u>	C. maintlate	C. M. MN.
Phosicar ashis distribution:	Niclinan to	nur cost to	ai Anna	alpine	Nidlands te	He slands to	mur coast to aidlands	Ni di anda	Hidlands	Coestal	Alpine	Consial to alpine	fadlands to alpine	Constal	alpian in	nsiarb.
inestation 2 cons	Ferest sargin	Forest eargin	Parshland	nowing 1	Kurshland and riparian situat-	Esparian situat- ions on forest naryin or is interfor	Forest airgin	Riparian situat ions in inter ar	- Diel	Rorshland on sea shora		Marshland, net fligh or rigar- ian situations	Marshi and	Par sh1 and	Wet flast or riparian situat- ions	Sementh science- phylicus shrubs
Light conditions:	Partial shade	Partial shade (full sun)	Feil se	Full sum (partial shade)	Full sun Spartial stades	Partial or full Made	Partial or foll shade	Full shade	Fall san	Full sun	Fall sum	Fall man or partial shade	Fuil sum	Full aut	Full aun	Partial take
New Property	mist (wt)	Moist (wet)	Personially unterlayed	B-rennially materiopped	Personnally setsrlogged	Perentially seterlogged	Nut (masst)	Wet (adist)	Perannially waterlogged	Perennially waterlogged	Seesanally waterlogged	Fermi ally weter logged	Paramially vatariogand	Peremially waterlogged	Second 1 y	Seasonally Instarlogged
Restruction System	Lung (clay)	(clay)	Gent	Elay (loss)	Clay (low	Clay or loss	Clay or loss	Lem (clay)	Dol on: te-der i ved	Sand	Basaltic	Clay or loss	Dolomita- derived, er clay or Isan	Clay (Joan)	Besaltin	Boliana te-dena ved
<u>MARAN reduc</u> e	-	Talane (a)]	lamor ed ulster	Minter, summer or all seasons	-	-	Winter (all seasons	1	Lant	Kinter (all Seasons)	-	inter, sotter or all season	Summer (a) 1 Sectors	Vinter (all	Laur	tanter

Table 1. Habitats of the southern African species of Carex

Table 2. Macromorphological characters of the vegetative organs that distinguish the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.

		-		() () () () () () () () () ()	Ra Subgenus Cartes													
Features	Subgenus	Indocares	Subgenus	Vignes						Subgenus Carez					-	5		
	E. spicato- paniculaus	<u>C. :ulumsis</u>	<u>C. divisa</u>	C. slowersbills	C. austro- africana	C. aossii	C. aethiopica	<u>C. sylvatica</u>	C. burchelliana	<u>C. ecklonii</u>		C. cognata	C. autiforms	<u>C. clavata</u>	C. subinflata			
VESETATIVE -																		
Plants - height:	1 3001 400 📾	1 0001 350	100415 an	(100) 67	259605 m	1 400 mm	470—i 200 m	476 m	340-440	176710 📖	2060 m	340-765 6	450800	4101 /00 m	295900 mm	4		
Pehit:	Campitose	Caespitose	Long-thizonatous	Long-rhi:cana cusi	Campitose or long-rhizonatous	Caespitose	Caespitose	Caespitose	Carspitose	Caespitose	Caespitose or long-rhizozatous	Caespitose or long-rhizomatous	Caespitose and long-rhi:omatous	Caespituse	Caespitose	2		
hizone diamters	4 m	2,53(5) -	1,55,0 m	1,53,5 m	3 m	5 m	36 📾	1,53,0 m	1,52,5 m	1,5 m	1,0-1,5 🛲	2,54,0 #	5 an	35 1	2,53,0 .	2		
Anthucysein col- mention in short scalars and basal leaves:	Resent for present as small patches)	Absent for present as small patches'	Resent for present as seall patchesi	Absent for present as small patches!	Actent (or pre-ent su saal) patci es)	Absent (or present as small patches)	Intensively developed	Absent for present as small patches;	Absent (or present as small patches)	Resent for present as small patches)	Absent ior present as seal i patches1	Absent for present as small patchesi	Absent (or present as seal) patches)	present as shall patches!	Adment for present as ana'l patches)			
Laura -	•	10		•	18	785	Yes	Ne .	185	•	No	86	Tes	Yes	Tes			
Leeves - colour:	Duri green	Yellow-green or dark green	Yellow-green	Yellow-grien or aid-green	As d-green	Dark green	Dark green	Dark green	nie-gram.	Yellow-green	Hid-green	fellow-green	Hid-gras	Yellow-groen	Hid green			
Transarias venation:	Usmally not conspicuous	Usually net conspicuous	Usual'v pot conspic.cus	Usually not conspicuous	Esually not conspicuovs	Usually not conspicuous	Usually not conspicuous	Usually not conspicuous	Usually not ccaspicuous	Usually not conspicuous	Usually not consp.cuous	Very conspicuous	Usually not conspicuous	Usually not compicuous	conspicuous			
Bannt Ivef shunth	Folded	Folded	Tubul ar	Tubular	Fol ded	Faidel	Fol ded	Falded	Folded	<u>Tubul er</u>	Folded	Falded	Folded	Folded	Folged	-		
Bid basa' leaf pheaths becoming soongy:		No	14	N	8	10	No	10	-		112	Ne	<u>Te-</u>	*	16	ľ		
Adamian face of based shouths - made of selitting:	Splitting simply	Splitting simply	Splitting simply	Splitting simply	Tearing into medicanous strips	Splitting simply	Tearing into embranous strips	Splitting simply	Splitting simply	Tearing into nembranous strips	learing into membranous striµs	Tearing into aestrancus strips or splitting simply	Splitting into connected fibrillae	Splitting simply	Tearing into membranous strips			
Largest basal Inaf blade - dimensions	600 X 8,514,0 am	500550 X 712 m	(140)150 X 2,02,5 m	130	300480 I `7 am	485 x 12-15 st	800-1,50 I 712 as	450 X 79 m	200210 I 45 sa	30340 I 2,54,0 an	65-100 ¥ 2,23,0 m	230: 1 6#	550 1 510 mm	300- 300 X 611 ma	220 X 6-10 m	12 01		
Blode - shape in .	Flat er plicate	Flat	Channelled	Flat or chann- elied	Flat or piicate	flat or plicate	Flat, keeled 🌱 plicate	Flat	Flat	Channelled or plicate	Flat or keeled	Flat	Flat or plicate	Flicate	Flat ur plicate	ľ		
Adaxial surface - Indumentum:	Scalarid in vic- inity of veins	Scabrid in vic- inity of veins	Papil ¹ ste	Papillate	Gi abrous.	Stations	61 abr ous	ill abroux	Glabrous	61 abrous	6) abrious	Scabrid in vic- inity of veins	Glabrous	Glabrous	Elabrout			
Aborial surface - lindu ventua:	61 abrous	61 abr cus	Glabrous	61 abrous	Papillate	Papislate	Papillate	61 abr nus	Biatros	Giabrous	Giabruus	Scabrid	Papillate	Papillate	Papillate	ľ		
flargins - indurentus (low est.):	Provinal: glabrous Distal: minutely scabrid	Provinal: glabrous Distal: minutely scabrid	Procinal: glabrous Distal: ainutely scabrid	Prominal: papillate Distal: scabrid	Provisal: glabrous Distal: minutely scabrid	Proxiewl: papillate Distal: scabrid	Proximal: glabr- cus to papillate Bistal: minutely scabrid to scabrid	Provimal: papillate Distali scabrid	Prominal: papillate Distal: scabrid	Procients glabrous Distals minutely scabrid	Proximal: papillate Distal: scabrid	Proximal: glabrous Distal: minutely scabrid	Proximal: glabrous Distals minutely scabrid	Proximal: papillate Distal: scabrid	Provimal: papillate Distal: scabrid			
Lowest cule leaf	Truncate er	Concave	Truncate	Iruncate	Concave	Convex	Truncate	Concave	CERNEA	Concave	Concave	Truncate, or usually concave	Conceve	Carceve	Concave			
Sheath muth -	flender ancous	Herbiceans	Peebr anous	Pleater anous	Netrains	Sederatous	Redrators	Plexbr anour	Heibrancris	Heathrance:s	Newby anous	Heabranous	"lerbacecus	Membr anous	Mente anoes	ľ		
Liquie - texture	Menterancus Stranineous or	Heabrancour Fuscous	Herbrancus Fuscous	Heabranous Whitish or	Perior anous Fuscous	Fuscous	Heabranous Stramineous	Henbrancus Stranineous or Fuscous	Heatrancus Fuscous	Henter anous Fuscous	Hembranous Mhitish	Leebrancus Straeineous	Hestrandus. Mi- tish, stramin- edus or fusious	Hembranous. Hhi- tish with forru- ginou, spots	Hembranous, Whi- tish with ferru- ginous spots			
	105.005		1.5.00	1.57.0 m	711	20 📾	1,32,5 .	5.00	24 m	1 -	2 ==	4 44	14 m	<u>15 m</u>	<u>35(-45) m</u>	ľ		
Liquie - Merent:	cute to abtuse	Acute or obtuse	Obtuse	Ottane	Acuta	tate or eavrg-	Aute	Enarginate	Acute	Chiuse (to exarginate)	Obtuse	Acute or obtuse	Acute	Acute	Acute	0		

0

0

38

da. Princera

10. 1m.

40 se aespitose

espites

2,5--3,0 =

rent for resent as si tches)

lid-green

Hexally not conspicuous

Tubilar

Tearing into membranous strips

228 X 0,75 m

uncelled

G1 abrous

labrout

Proximal: glabrous Distal: minutely scabrid

Concave

lenbr ancus

Sentor anous

-

Table 3.

c

Description of the inflorescence in the four subgenera of <u>Carex</u> L.

Feiture		Subg	911.15	
Ferture	Indocar ex	Vienee	Cares	Primocarum
infloresconce - description	Panicle	Spike or pairle of gloserules	acene of spikes	Single spike
triann trachas - tearristion	Prisary units of influr- escence sometimes paired, all pedunculate	Branches sessile, vertically compres wd	Spiker pedunculate	N/ap
Practa and Practanian - Amoriantions	Primary bracts lesf- like, sheathing basally. Opposing bracteoles (cladoprophylis) tubul- er, concealed by bract sheaths. Higher order bracts setaceous. Dppos- ing bracteoles exposed, frequently inflated and perigynius-like	Primary bracts setsc- eous, not sheathing. Opposing bracteoles neither sheathing nor inflated	Prinary bracts leaf- 'ike, sheathing baselly. Gynoming bracteries (c).doprophylls) 'ubul- er, c.mcealed by bract sheath.	Besal bract glume-like (to setaceous)
Eliminate and cistillate limmen - cistributions	Utinate units of inflorescence in mension and opynoue	UStinace units of Jaflorescence bisexual, and ogynous	Ultimate units o inflorescence unis wual or biserual, usually apical units staminet, hasal units pistillate and median units andro- gymous, frequently all units androgymous or mixed	Infin astence bisevual, androgy-mus (in the southern Mrican species)
Ttigass -	3	2	3 (2)	3 (in the southern African species)

N/ap = not applicable

Table 4. Macromorphological characters of the inflorescence that distinguish the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L

1	Schemes Inc. carps																
Features	Subgene			Jungends Times					-	Subcenus Cares	-						
	C. spicato-	C. zuluensis	C. DVIM	C. elonerabilis	airicene	C. ansii	C. aethiopica	C. sylvatica	C burchelliana	C. ectionii	C. emotrose	C. cognata	C. acutiformis	C. clavata	C. subinflata		
INFLORESTENCE -																T	
Gula creas-	Tršangular	friancia -	Triangular	Trangular	Sharply triangular	fra angul ar	Triangular	Tr i angul ar	Triangular	1rsangul ar	Triangular	Sharply triangular	Sharply triangular	Trianguiar	Tri angul ar	Ī	
Enla diamatar:	2-3 M	1,5-2,7	1	11 in	**	2,5-4,0 m	1,5-3,0 .	1,5-2,0	1,2-1,7	1-2	0,5-1,0 m	25 m	1-1 m	1,5-3,0 m	1,52,0	T	
<u>internation -</u> <u>enternation</u> s	International all of about equal length, exposed	Internodes all of about equal length, exposed	Uppermost inter- node very long, low all basal, very short, concealed by leaf sheaths	Uppermost inter- node very long all basal vary short, concealed by leaf sheaths	Upperaist inter- node vary long lower all useal, very short, concealed by less sheaths	Internodes all of about equal length, exposed	Internodes all of about equal length; exposed	Internodes all of about equal length, exposed	Internodes all of abrut equal length, exposed	Internodes all of about equal length, exposed	Cuta very slort. concealed by leaf sheaths	internodes all of about equal langth, exposed	Uppermost inter node very long lower all basal very short, concealed by leaf sheaths	Internodes all of about equal length, exposed	Internodes all of about equal length, exposed	1	
Hodes minister	(1-)23	2-3	0	q	0	2	1-2	12	1	101	0	12		(0-)2	2-3		
Infloresence	Panicle	Panizir	ipite of glonerules	Spike or paniels of glomerules	seen of spikes	Raceme of spike	s Racone of spike	Raceme of spites	ficer of space	Racene of spike	Racene of spites	Racome of spikes	Racene of spake	Racess of spike	Nacene of spike	N.	
Inflorescence disensions:	270335 i 5540 m	240505 1 2050 m	12—17 Z 7—9 m	15-50 1 P15	Se-310 as long lwidth n/av	286560 en long iwidth n/avi	155445 mm long twidth m/avl	200330 am long Iwidth n/avl	B0440 mm long (widt: m/av)	2050 mm long (width n/av)	12-20 m long (width e'av)	115195 mm long (width m/av)	130400 an long	115-650 mm lon (width n/av]	g 65110 mm long (wadth n/av)		
Banal bratt - Bancrintions	Laaf-like, not eflexad avar	-like, rat reflexed near	Brisile-Line	Bristle-like	insf-like, not reflexed near base	Leaf-liks, not refiezed near base	Leaf-like, not eflexed near base	Leaf-like, not reflexed near base	Leaf-like, not reflexed near base	Leaf-like, reflexed near hase at exturity	Leaf-like, not reflexed near base	Leaf-like, not reflexed near base	Leaf-like, not reflexed near base	Leaf-like, not reflexed near base	Leaf-like, not reflexed near base		
ir act mosth - Longth:	2-30 =	2060 🗪	<u>0 m</u>	-	3	50 25 m	35-90 m	2550	1555 🗪	9-73 m	2 m	020 📾	2.14	2390 M	1525 m		
Wade - length:	290 📾	170-340 m	10-17 -	10-45(140)	150380 m	185600 mm	190 580 m	300 m	220 m	50 - 190 🗰	1545 an	300500 as	i40570 m	110350 🖬	60-165 -	ľ	
In branches/	Pranches, 43	Branches, 5+	Branches, 57	Branches, 710	lipikes, Il	Spikes.	Spikes,	Spikes, 7—8	Spikes, 3-5	lipikes, 4-5	Spi 18, 38	Spikes,	Spiles,	Spiller, CD-4	Spikes, 4-4		
Brientation:	Star Bading	fract or subaract	Eact or männest	Spreading	Penkipin	Pendul cus	Erect, suberect or pendulous	Erect or suberact	Erect or subarect	Spreading	Spreading	Erect, suberect or pendulous	Erect or subcrect	Erect or herect	Erect or suberect		
Clustering or I* is another/ Solvest	• j	18.	Tes	Tes .	No (except 23 apical)	No (except 23 apical)	No lexcept 2—3 apicali	No (except 2—3 apical)	No (except 23 apical)	Yes (basal spike sometimes remote)	10	Yes in one form No in another	No (except 23 apical)	No (except 23 apical)	No (except 23 apical)		
Larcent i* unit -	\$-81 3-32 ■	5045 1 820 am	2	5	2570 I 211	120185 £ 58 m	3075 I 78 m	3565 I 67 M	1025 I 3 -4 m	1522 1 710 -	1-41 1-41	2070 1 7i1	300800 X 48 s	30100 I 1015	2040 I 911 en	I	
event petucia evented length:	5060 mm	3-E #	N/40	**	2-130 -	15100	(17)130 🛥	2578 m	0-27 m	0	<u>0. m</u>	065 az	050 aa	0+1 as	023		
tun:	Mairy	Hairy	M/4p	Nap	Scabrid	Scanad	Scabrid on ang- las or glabrous	Scabr d on angles	61 aur Cles	Si Arour	el abrous	Scabrid on angles	Scabrid on angles	Scabrid on angles	Scabrid on angles		
racianies aubr Iending higher arder bruchess	inflated	Not inflated	Nut inf]ated	Not inflated	N/aç	We	W/ap	N 4	Hing	W.q.	B/4)	**	N-W	N/49	11°44		
<u>nical stim -</u> mi	-				thually stannate, sccannally and oppresent two	Usually stamin- ate, frequently androgynous, occasionally androg sucand- rous, gynecand rous or mixed	dmually staninate	Usually staminate	Ihmally stahinate	Usually staninate	Urually s.anicate	Usually staminate, occassionally androgynecand= rous	Usually staniate	Usually staminate	Unuality staeinate		
NAMES - SAL AT	N/40	N'4	W.Q	Wing .	Itaniase 0-1 Patillate 3-5	Staminate 0-1 Fistiliate 0 Besezual 6-8	Staminate 1-2 Pistillate 3-5 Bisenual 0	Staminate I Pistilizze 6—7 Bismusal O	Staminute 12 Pistillate 13 Disevuel 03	Pastillate 34 Brannual 03	Staminate 01 Pistillate 23 Diseswal 91	Staminate 02 Püstillate 26 Bisexual 01	Staminate 13 Pistillata 14 Biseraal 32	Staminate 13 Pistillate 14 Bismuml 03	Staminate 1-2 Pistillate 3-5 Bisenual 0-2		
COLUMN IN LOS	N/ap	-	No I		Rosent	Resert	Wasant	/bamt	Aset	Orrasionally a	Abamt	Asent	Reant	Occasionally present	Decasionally present	F	

25×10

32×10

N/ap = not applicable N/av = not vvailable

0.1

0

0

Ø

40 Subg. Prinorare C Terete 0,8-1,2 🗰 Upper most inter-node very long all basal wery short concealed by leaf sheaths ingle spike 14--28 I ilune-like --3. 110. ndr ogynous i Sexual I

Table 5.Macromorphological characters of the spikelet
bracts and staminate spikelets that distinguish
the southern African species of Carex L.

		1			Tana												
Features	SUBOTINE	Indec ar ex	Subgenu	is Vignes						Subgenus Carez							
	micaro-	C. zulannis	<u>5. 61 17 54</u>	C. glassrabilia	C. mitro-	C. martini	C. anthinnica	C. sulvatica	C. Inschalling	C. ecklonii	C. emetropa	C. cognata	C. andifirmin	<u>C. clavata</u>	C. subinflata		
WINDLET MACHS					-												
<u>Staning,s sping-</u> i <u>sts - tracts</u> :	Mut discrphic (or only mlightly)	Net dimorphic (or only slightly)	Not dimorphic for only slightly)	Not disorphic (or only slightly)	Net disorphic for only slightly!	Not dimorphic (or only slightly)	Not dizz phic (or only slight.c)	Not disorphic (or only slightly)	Not discrphic (or only slightly)	Not discrphic for only slightly/	Nut dirorphic (or only slightly)	Not dimorphic (or only slightly)	<u>Extremely</u> <u>dimorphic</u>	Mot dimorphic for only slightly)	Not dimorphic (or only slighty)		
inther lanth:	1,52,2 m	2,83,5 m	2,8-3,2 -	1,72,6 m	2,5 m	3,5-4,0 m	2,2-5,0 m	2,2 🗰	2,02,2 m	2,5 🚥	12 m	2,3-2,5 m	2,5-4,0 m	3,05,5 as	2,53,2 m		
Punillute miter	84 1 1,51,8 m	3,5-4,5 I 2 m	4,5-5,0 I	3,0-5,5 I 1,3-2,0 =	4,5-6,5 X 8,8-1,2 m	4,05,5 I 1,01,5 m	4	45 I 1,5 m	2,5-3,0 I 2,0-2,2 m	4,25,0 I 1,82,2 m	2,53,0 X 1,2 m	5	3,0-5,5 m 10,6-1,2 m	56 I 1,94,0 m	3,5-5,0 1 1,5-2,5 m		
Part disprises	Burter and of Burchi width	Shorter and narrower	Longer and wider	Shorter and Barrower	Langer and marrower	Langer and herrower	Equal length and narrower	Equal length and	Shorter and carrower	Shorter and	Shorter and Aprendir	Senal length and	Longor and	Shorter and	Shorter and narrower		
Wract - kndy taltari	Stramineous, or atramineous with Imruginees atriae and hya- line margins	Stranineous with ferruginous striae and hya- line margins	iniden-brown, with wide hya- linc margins	Solden-brown or ferruginous	Straninouus	Solden-brown, with wide hys- line margins	Straminerus with ferruginous istriam and hya- line margins, or ferruginous	Hyaline with ferruginous striae	Stranineous	Ferruginaus	Yellow and ferruginous	Ferruginous	Ferruginaus	Stramineous with ferruginous striae and bya- line margins	Ferringsnous		
Brack - Josly Kofusethas	Ecabrid seinly an distal half, rarely glabrous with distal sar- gins ciliate	Glabrous with distal margins ciliate	01 abreus	Scabrid mainly on distal half or glabrous with distal margins ciliate	Blabrous, some- times with distal margins ciliate	51 abrous	Glahemun with distal margins ciliate	61 abrous	Glaberus with distal margins ciliate	El aor ous	El altrous	Slabrous	Glabrous with distal margins ciliate	Glabrous with distal sarging ciliate	Glabrous		
Bract - booy	Brate	Diate	Lvate	Ovate	Q. etc	Lanceslate	Obovate	Lanceolate	Broadly svate	Grate	Lanceulate	Geste- lanceslate	Lanceolate	Ovate-lanceclate	Broadly ovate		
Carina of bracts	Narran, I-nerved	Na zar, S-narva	Brand, 3-nerved	Narras, 1-marve	Broad, 3-ner ed	lis row, 1-nerved	Broad, 3-nerved	Broad, S-nerved	Broad, 3-nerved	Sreed, C-nerved	Broad, 3-nerved	Broad, 3-nerved	Broad, 3-nerved	Broad, 3-nerved	aroad, 3-nerved		
then of bracts	Acete or abtu e	Obtune (usually) or enarginate	Acute	Acute, rarely	Intuse er Interginate	Arnte	Acute or exarginate	Acute	Obtuse or enarginate	Otuse or exarginate	Obtuse or enarginate	Sbtise, sie- times energinate	Acueinate or energinate	Acuminate or energinate	Enarginate, scortines acute		
Larina ternier	martly aved	Short ¹ y award	inned to autic-	mened or mutar-	Annel	femed, usually meticous	t in rd	Awned	9. tly aned	Shortly awned	Anned, auticous or sub-apical	for al	Avned	Amed	Shortly avned		
An lanth	0.5-0.7 6	(0)1 #4	e0,3 m	02 m	2,0-4,2	00,3 m	0,51,8	0,5-1,0 🛥	0,2-0,4 m	C,92,0 m	0-0,2 m	,2-3,0 m	an C ₁ 57,1	0,72,0 m	0,5-1,0 m		
	Scabrid	Scentid	Scabrid	Scabrid	Scalerid	Tous	Scabrid	Scabr1d	Scabrid	Scabrid	Scabrid	Scalarid	Scab-id	Scabrid	Scabrid		

0

M/av = not availabl

0

0

ò

ing. <u>Primecorn</u>	
<u>. 10. MPV.</u>	
at dimorphic or only lightly)	
l'av	
1 ,2 m	

41

Golden-brenn, with wide hyaline margins

il abrous

Bexate
lerrow, 1-merved
<u>bssidate</u>
mend or mutic-

ows O---0,5 an Sparzely scabrid

Page I

Table 6. Macromorphological characters of the perigynium that distinguish the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.

2	-		-			Taza											
Features	Subgen	es Indocares	Subger	us <u>Vienea</u>						Subgenus Carez		-				Subg. Primocard	
	C. soicoto- peniculata	£. sulumnis	C. divisi	C. glomerabilist	C. austro- airicana	C. mossii	C. arthiopica	C. svivatica	C. beshelliare	C. ectionii	C. monotropa	C. cognata	C. acutifornis	C. clavata	C. mbinfiata	5. 10. itte.	
PERIOTRIAL -																	
Perjaynaun base	Not stipitate. with a callus	Not stipitate, with a callus	Not stipitate, without a callu	Stipitate or net, without a callus	Stipitate, without a callu	Stipitate, =ithout a callu	Not stipitute, s without a callus	Stipitate, without a callus	Not stipitate, without a callu	Stipitate, swithout a callu	Mot stipitate, without a callu	Stipitate, s without a callu	Stipitate, s without a callu	Not stipitate, without a callu	Stipitate, without a callu	Not stipitate, as without a calle	
Persemius bene	Hot corky	Not corky	Not carky	Carky	Not carky	Not carky	Not contry	Not conky	Not corky	Not corky	Not carky	Not corky	int carly	Net corky	Not corky	Not corky	
Perigynius aper:	Rustrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Austrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Rostrate	Erostrate	
- mientations	Buburect	Suberect	Suburect	Spreading	Suberect	Suberect	Suberect	Suberect	Suberact	Saler ACT	Suberect to spreading	Spreading	Suberact	Spreading	Spreading, some times reflexed	- Subwect	
re of inflation	Not inflated	Slightly inflated	Mat inflated	Not inflated	Slightly inflated	Not or slightly inflated	Slightly to much inflated	Not initiated	Thich sofiated	Slightly to much inflaind	Ruch Inflates	Much inflated	Not inilated	Much Inflators	Much inflated	Not inflated	
Shape in cross- mections	Triangular	Triangular with winged base	Elliptic	Elliptic with flat base	Marrowly miliptic	Triangular	Narrowly elliptic	Triangular with rounded base	Triangular	Triangular with rounded base	Retund	Rotund	Triangular	Shallowly triangular	Raturd	Marrowly elliptic	
diamaionai	5,05,5 x 1,2 m	4,5-6,^ J 1,5-2,0 m	4,2 X 1,8 as	(3,0)5,5 I (1,1)2,2 m	54 X 1,51,8 m	2,53,5 I 1,01,5 am	5,5-6,5 I 1,2-4,0 m	4,54,7 I 1,3 m	3,03,5 I 1,62,0 m	4,55,5 1 1,82,5 m	4,04,5 X 1,21,5 m	4,0-5,2 I 1,5-2,0 an	34 X 1,42,0 m	67 I 2.5-3.0 m	4	4 X 2 m	
Griant	Green to golden breen	Green	6ni den-brown	Stramineous to Ferruginous	Mid-bro n to ferruginaus, rostrum whitish	Green to stran- incous, rostrum whitish	Green to stram- incous, ferrug- incus spotted	Green or galden- brown	Green to stram- incous, ferrug- incus spotted	Green to stram- ineous, ferrug- inous spotted	Bright yellow	Stramineous and Ferruginous	Greși di green, rostrum whitish	Green or stram- inecus, ferrug- incus spotted	Green or stram- ineous with or without ferrug- inous sp.ts	Hyaline and golden-brown	
Interes	Herbacacus	Herbaceaus	Cartilaginous	Cartilaginous	Cartilaginous	fieibr anous	Cartilaginous	Resbrancus	Cartilaginous	Cartilaginous	Harb-ceous	Cartilaginous	Cartilaginous	Cartilaginous	Cartilaginous	Risebranous	
Hervation:	46 curved, on mbax,al surface	2 submarginal on abaxial surface	Hany-ner ved	Many-ner ved	Fee- or inconspicuously nerved	Feer or inconspicuously nerved	flany-ner ved	Few- or inconspicuous), nerved	Hany-ner ved	Hany-nerved	Many-nerved	Nany-ner ved	Rany-ner ved	Many-ner ved	Raty-served	Fine or inconspicuously nerved	
lationatua (mictudina ratirup):	9. brid 1n Idistal half	<u>Scabrid in</u> <u>distal half</u>	01 abrous	61 abrous	Pamiliate, with	61 abr ous	6' abrous	Gl abrous	61 abr ous	61 abrous	81 abrous	61 abrous	Papillate, with hollow papillae	61 abrous	GI abrous	Mainly glabrous with a few short conical hairs at distal end	
<u>Anstrun shann</u> :	Abrupt Straight	Tapered Bent upwards	Tapered Straight	Tapered Straight	Abrupt straight	Abrupt Straight	Taprred Straight	Abrupt Straight	Abrupt Straight	Abrupt Straight	Tapered Straigh	Abrupt Straight	Abrup: "*raight	Abrupt, some times tapered Straight	Abrupt Straight	N/ap	
Rentrum Longth:	2.м	1,22,0 m	1,5 m.	0,8-2,0 m	9,3-0,5 m	0,5-0,6 mm	1,21,6 =	2 m	0,5	0,7-1,2 m	1,2—1,8 m	1,12,0 mm	0,81.0 sm	1,01,5 m	1,01,2 m	N/ap	
Amilian norman:	liot winged, Icabric	Not winged, acabrid	Not winged, scabrid	Hinged, scabrid	tot winged, Labrous	Not winged, glabreus	Not winged, glabrous	Not winged, scabrid	Not winged, scabrid	Not winged, glabrous	Not winged, glaorous	Not winged, glabrous	Not winged, glabrous	Not winged, scabrid	Not winged, glabrous	W/ap	
TALENAL AND	Imply bidentate	Shallonly Midentate	Bhallowly bidentate	Bellowly Didentate	Truncate	Shallowly bidentate	Deeply bidentate	Shailowiy bidentate	Shallowly bidentate	Shallowly bidentate	Shallowly bidentate	hemply bidentate	Shallowly bidentate	Deeply bidentate	Shallowly bidentate	¥/ap	
inith Length:	0,61,0 m	0,40,7 m	.l m	0,3-0,7 m	0,25 m	6 m	0,ś-1,0 🚥	0,2 m	0,2 🚥	0,3 0,5 m	(0,2)C,7 m	0,5-1,6 m	0,3 m	0,51,0 m	0,3- 0,6 m	l€/ap	
Benhilla:	Buant	bse it	liternt	pometians present in basal upikulets	linsent	Absent	sometimes present in basal sp kelets	lisent	N sent	kernt	Absent	libsent	ibsent	libsent	libsent	Present	

O

Table 7. Macromorphological characters of the gynoecium and fruits that distinguish the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.

								1 800	1									
Sasturas	Subarnus	Indosarex	Subgenus	Vignea					-	Subgenis Cares		-						
-	C. miceto- maniculata	<u>C. zulumnie</u>	C. divisa	E. closerabilis	C. matro- africana	C. manii	<u>C. authimpica</u>	r evivatica	C. brabilias	echienii	t. motras	C. comata	<u>C. acutifarana</u>	<u>C. clausta</u>	C. mhinilata	-		
FRUITS -					1						1							
Style hann	Straight	Straight	Straight	Straight	Utraight	Slightly bent to straight	Triated	Straight	Slightly bent or streight	Twisted, bent or straight	Straight	Inisted	Straight	Elightly bent or straight	Slightly bent er straight	50		
Stones	3	3	2	2	2	2	3	2	3	2	3	2	2	3	3	3		
cross/	Triangular	Friangular	Aprendy elliptic	Nerroniy elliptic	Berrowly miliptic	Triangular	Triangular	Triangular	Triangelar	Triangular	Triangular	Triangular	Triangular	Triangular	Triangular	tri		
-	Ellip	Elliptic	livet.e	Severe	Danato	Bouts to elliptic	Chanate	Elliptic	Sboxate	Numuite.	Otovate	Amonta or elliptic	Obovate	Cha natz	Obovate	EI)		
Marine class:	WITTE	Narrox	t sal	Brast.	Abarent	Marr m	ihant	Absent	liger room	Harrow with a fast-lake hase	Roant.	Absant	Maant	list r su	Absent	22.5		
Mattet -	Z,8-Z,0 X	2,53,5 I	2 I 1,6 m	1,72,2 I 1,01,7 m	1,9-2,2 I 1,0-1,7 m	1,8-2.0 I 1,01,2 an	2,5-2,0 1 1,2-1,9 m	2,3-2,4 X 1,3-1,4 m	2,9-2,4 X 1,9-1,4 m	2,5-3,2 I 1,5-2,0 m	1,5-1,9 I 1 m	1,7-2,8 X 1,2-1,5 m	1,72,0 I 1,21,5 m	2,85,5 X 1,72,5 m	2,2-2,8 X 1,2-1,8 m	2.0		
Matter millerais	Glabrous	Minutaly	litabr cus	61 abr out	Minutaly popillose	8) abrous	Pinuknly papillose	61 abrous	Simboly populiose	Minutely popillose	Himstaly papillose	Minutaly capillose	61 abrous	Hinskel y popillose	Minutaly papellose	61 .		
Males colours	Fuscous with lighter angles	Fusicus with lighter angles	Wellowssh-brown	Yellowish-brown	Fuecous with Righter angles	Blackish, or fuscous with lightar angles	Fusceus with lighter angles	Puncture with lighter angles	Firscoss with Highlar angles	Functions with lighter angles	Functions	Fuscous with lighter angles	Yellowish-brown	Fuscous with lighter angles	Fuscess with lightar angles	Ya I		
and the second se		and it is a second second		1														



No. of facing pg.: 44

Plate 1.

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Inflorescence morphology of representatives of the subgenera.

- Plate 1.1: Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u>: Inflorescence a panicle; primary units pedunculate; bracts subtending primary units leaf like, sheathing basally; opposing bracteoles (cladopropylls) tubular, concealed by bract sheaths; higher order bracts setaceous; opposing bracteoles exposed, frequently inflated and perigynium-like; ultimate units of inflorescence bisexual, androgynous (<u>C. spicato-paniculata</u>, <u>Reid</u> 1191) X 0,7.
- Plate 1.2: Subgenus <u>Vignea</u>: Inflorescence a spike or panicle of glomerules (i.e. axes of ultimate units vertically compressed); primary units sessile; bracts subtending primary units setaceous, not sheathing; opposing bracteoles neitner sheathing nor inflated; ultimate units of inflorescence bisexual, androgynous (<u>C.</u> <u>glomerabilis</u>, <u>Reid 1137</u>). Life size.
- Plate 1.3: Subgenus <u>Carex</u>: Inflorescence a raceme of spikes; spikes pedunculate; bracts subtending spikes leaflike, sheathing basally; opposing bracteoles (cladopropylls) tubular, concealed by bract sheaths; spikes unisexual or bisexual, usually apical spikes staminate, basal spikes pistillate and median units androgynous, but frequently all spikes androgynous or mixed (<u>C. cognata</u>, <u>Reid 1210</u>). Life size.
- Plate 1.4: Subgenus <u>Primocarex</u>: Inflorescence a single spike; basal bract glume-like (to setaceous); spike bisexual. androgynous (in the southern African species) (<u>C. sp. nov.</u>, <u>Reid 1337</u>). Life size.



CHAPTER 3. MICRONORPHOLOGICAL CHARACTERS

A. INTRODUCTION

This section includes all characters studied with the aid of a Scanning Electron Microscope (SEM). There is a slight overlap with Macromorphological Characters (Chapter 2), as perigynium and fruit shape and size were masured under the dissecting microscope.

Although Metcalfe (1971) and Ellis (1973) discussed lamina surfaces that had been pr pared from epidernal scrapes and were mostly examined under the compound microscope, the same principles are applicable to the present study. The terminology of Metcalfe and Ellis has been utilized wherever appropriate.

B. MATERIALS AND METHODS

For studies of the lamina surface, pieces of fresh material were placed into FAA in the field. (FAB - 401 formalin, 952 alcohol, acetic acid, and water, i the proportion 1:10:1:8.) A voucher specimen was pre fared for much collection; duplicates are to be lodged in And PRE. Volumers are marked with a plus symbol (+) in Ap endix 1.1. In the laboratory small pieces of entire leaf we e criticalpoint dried; the procedure is explained in Appen in 3. This was done for all taxa except one (<u>C. divisa</u>), whilm refreshpreserved material was not available. In this case dried herbarium material was first rehydrated by boilint, placed in FAA for 24 hours, and critical-point dried.

The pieces were mounted on aluminium stubs with the aid of double-sided adhesive tape, ensuring that both abaxial and adaxial surfaces were exposed. Drops of silver DAG were placed between and in contact with the specimen and the mounting tape, to achieve better contact and prevent charging. Gold sputter-coating was performed automatically in an Empcope SC 500 for two minutes at 20 mA. Using an ISI-SX-25 SEM, the specimens were examined and photographed at 25 kV. For e. e of comparison it was ensured that the distal end of the leaf was always on the left side in the photograph.

46

For studies of the perigynium and fruit surfaces, both mature and immature samples were removed from herbarium. specimens. The immature samples were required for examination of the morphology of the style and of the rostrum teeth, which are frequently lost or damaged on Mature specimens. Vouchers are marked in Appendix 1.1 with a dollar symbol (\$). From one mature sample the perigynium was removed by hand to expose the fruit (and the rhachilla, when present). A further sample, after removal of the perigynium, was subjected to acetolysis (the procedure is listed in Appendix 3). The procedure was carried out for all caxa. Vouchers are marked in Appendix 1.1 with a numero symbol (\$). These samples were mounted on aluminium stubs, as explained above, coated, and examined under SEM. For ease of comparison it was ensured that the distal end of the specimen was always on the left side of the photograph.

C. <u>RESULTS</u>

C

1. Leaf lamina surface

1.1. <u>General description of the southern African</u> species

Margins: Papillae, when present, occurring singly at distal end of cell (Pl. 2.3 & 3.1). Prickles, when present, with barbs orientated towards lamina apex (Pl. 2.1). Epicuticular wax: When present on both surfaces, thicker on abaxial (P1. 2.4) than adaxial surface (P1. 2.5). When present frequently interrupted, absent from outer surface of stomatal grard cells and apices of papillae (Pl. 2.4 & 3.2), usually also from lamina margin. Leaf surface papillae: When present, very conspicuous under SEM, appearing much brighter than adjacent epidermal features due to charging. Generally epidermal calls longitudinally elongated with papillae single, eccentrically situated, at distal end of cell (Pl. 2.4 & 3.2). Prickles. When associated with costal zones, occurring in one or few longitudinal files on either side of, or occasionally within, chains of silica cells (PA. 4.3). Stomata: Paracytic, subsidiary cells "kidney"-Saped (P1. 3.1 & J.2). Lamine remation and cell shape: Lamina longitudinally divided into distinct costal and intercostal zones, characterized by differences in cell shape and size, noticeable even at relatively low magnification (Pl. 2.1 &

3.5); cells of intercostal zone longer and wider than those of costal zone (P1. 4.1); stomata always located in intercostal zones (Pl. 3.5); costal zones conspicuous due to occurrence of ane to several rows of silica cells (P1. 4.1). Generally cells of intercostal zonr large and rectangular (P1. 2.5), but varying to almost square when occurring in stomatal rows between .wo vertically adjacent stomata. In all species cell walls markedly sinuous (P1. 2.5 & 4.1); sini of sinuosities known to contain minute silica bodies (P1. 4.5). (In <u>C. sp. nov.</u> cut edge of sample revealed sinuosities to be peg-like structures not extending full depth of cell. In this same specimen epidermal cells were seen to be longitudinally greatly elongated, being about four to five times longer than subjacent mesophyll cells.) Silica cells: Rows known to mark position of larger veins; unlike Praceae, cells not accompanied by cork cells. Cell walls not always visible under SEM, but silica bodies within visible as bright spots of light fue to charging (P1. 4.1). (Structure of silica bodies was examined in two caxa in which sample was obliquely cut: <u>C. acutiformis</u> and <u>C.</u> spicato-paniculata X C. zuluensis. These consist of a large plate resting on and filling base of cell, with a large central cone almost touching outer cell wall, and a ring of smaller satellite comes near margin of plate - Pl. 4.2.)

1.2. Characters that distinguish the species

49

Margins: Smooth to papillate in most species (P1, 2.3 & 3.3), usually with a few prickles at lamina apex, but welldeveloped prickles along most of lamina length in some species (Pl. 2.2). Barbs of prickles generally raised at about 30° from surface (Pl. 2.2), but in some species almost appressed (P1. 2.1). Epicuticular wax: Vestigial or absent in some species, present only on abaxial surface in some species, and present on both surfaces in others. Leaf surface papillae: These were absent in many species, abaxial in most of the remaining species (Pl. 2.1, 2.4, 3.2, 3.5 & 3.6), and adaxial in one species. Prickles: Absent in most species; in some species present on adaxial and abaxial surfaces, in two of these associated with costal zones (Pl. 4.3). Stomata: Abaxial in most species, but in one species with one submarginal row on adaxial surface (Pl. 3.1) and in enother species wing six submarginal rows on adaxial surface (P1. 3.3). Stomatal complex normal in most species but overarched by four papillae in two species: in one species papillae long and narrow (P1. 3.2), in the other broad and triangular (Pl. 3.6). Surface of subsidiary cells flush with surrounding cells in most species, but markedly domed in one species (Pl. 3.2). Lamina zonation and cell shape: Calls of intercostal zone of adaxial epidermis were rectangular to square in most species (Pl. 2.5 & 4.4), but in two species were distinctly narrower at proximal end, broadening to distal end with the surface becoming domed (P1. 2.6).

6

These distinguishing characters are also summarized in Table 8. Diagnostic features are underlined.

2. <u>Perigynjum morphology</u>

For illustrative purposes perigynium morphology was resolved by means of SEM, but most of the qualitative and quantitative characters were measured with the aid of a dissecting microscope: the measurements are presented in Table 6 and in the species treatments in Chapter 5.

In surface view (as viewed under SEM) the perigynium was of the same basic ovate shape in all the southern African speciea, differing mainly in size, details of surface ornamentation and rostrum morphology. The latter two are dimcussed under separate headings below. In some species (<u>C.</u> <u>mossii</u>, <u>C. cognata</u>, <u>C. spicato-paniculate</u> and <u>C. zuluensis</u>) the perigynium was notably long-stipitate (P1, 5.3 & 6.5). In the remaining species it was either short or undeveloped (P1, 5.1 & 6.3) and seemed to be rather variable. In <u>C.</u> <u>spicato-paniculata</u> and <u>C. zuluensis</u> the stipe was developed into a conspicuous callus-like structure with a round base (P1, 5.2).

Shape in cross-section was not easily resolved under SEN. The distignatic species (<u>L. divise</u>, <u>C. glomerabilis</u> and <u>C. austro-africana</u>) were basically biconvex or with one surface (adaxial) flattened; the remaining (tristigmatic) species had a basic trigonous shape, which was however frequently obscured due to the degree of inflation of the perigynium. For example, the extremely inflated perigynium of <u>C. cognata</u> appeared almost rotund (Pl. 6.5), and that of <u>C. clavata</u> appeared biconvex.

3. <u>Perigynium surface</u>

In most species the perigynium surface comprised mainly rectangular cells, which were similar to the intercostal epidermal cells of the leaf lawina, and which also had sinuous walls (Pl. 5.6). At least two longitudinal ribs (costae) occurred in all of the species excepting <u>C. austroafricana</u> (Pl. 6.3) and <u>C. sp. nov.</u>. but were numerous and conspicuous in <u>C. cognata</u> (Pl. 6.5). The surface structure of the ribs (costal zones) was difficult to resolve under SEM, probably due to the cells being indurated, thus obliterating surfare features.

In <u>C. austro-africana</u> (P1. 6.3) and <u>C. acutiformis</u> the entire surface was papillate, but the shape of the papillae differed markedly: in <u>C. austro-africana</u> they remained swollen and globular even in very mature perigynia (P1. 6.4). In <u>C. acutiformis</u> the papillae appeared collapsed and scale-like even in very young perigynia, and in mature perigynia they appeared hellow <u>P1. 6.6</u>). In both these species the perigynium surface bore epicuticular wax, which was absent from all the other species. In <u>C. sp. nov.</u> there was a distinct narrow zone of uniquely-shaped papillae near the distal end of the perigynium. They were short and borne singly near the distal end of each cell, rising abruptly from the cell surface (P1. 5.4 & 5.6).

Scabrid hairs occurred especially towards the distal end of the perigynium surface in <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u>. <u>C.</u> <u>zuluensis</u>, and the suspected hybrid of <u>C. zuluensis</u> (P1. 6.1). In these species the hair worphology differed from that of the leaf lamina hairs: the bases consistently bore a longitudinal impression (P1. 6.2), which was absent from the leaf lamina hairs.

. Rostrum and style morphology

The term "rostrum" is applied to the distal part of the perigynium when it has become elongated, ensheathing the style base. For illustrative purposes the shape and ornamentation of the rostrum was more easily resolved with SEM than with LM. Measurements of the above-mentioned characters were made with the aid of a dissecting microscope, however. These are presented in Table 5 and in the taxonomic description of each species in Chapter 5.

The rostrum was developed in all species except <u>C. sp.</u> <u>nov.</u> (P1. 5.4), being very short in <u>C. austro-africana</u> (P1. 6.3) and extremely long in <u>C. sylvatics</u> and <u>C. monotropa</u>. The apex was bidentate in most species with the teeth exceptionally long and narrow in <u>C. connata</u> (P1. 6.5). The apex was truncate in <u>C. austro-africana</u> (P1. 6.3) and very shortly bidentate in <u>C. mossii</u>. <u>C. monotropa</u> and <u>C.</u> <u>burchelliana</u> (P1. 5.1 & 5.3).

The inner marging of the rostrum teeth were usually

ciliate (Pl. 5.1), but were glabrous in <u>C. austro-africana</u> (Pl. 6.3), <u>C. cognata</u> (Pl. 6.5) and <u>C. subinflata</u>. The outer margins were usually scabrid (Pl. 5.1, 5.5 & 6.1), hairy or papillate to a greater or lesser degree, but were glabrous in <u>C. mossii</u> (Pl. 5.3), <u>C. aethiopica</u>. <u>C. sylvatica</u>, <u>C.</u> <u>monotropa</u>. <u>C. cognata</u> (Pl. 5.5) and <u>C. subinflata</u>. The outer margins were very sparsely papillate in <u>C. ecklonii</u>.

Style morphology for all the species was fairly constant. All of the species had fairly thick, markedly papillate stigmas (Pl. 5.1). It was difficult to measure stigma length due to their being curled at maturity and breaking readily. The most notable difference between groups of species was in the number of stigmas: <u>C. divisa</u>. <u>C.</u> <u>elomerabilis</u> and <u>C. austro-africana</u> had two stigmas, and the remaining species nad three, but a suspected hybrid between <u>C. zuluensis</u> and an unknown species varied between two and three stigmas in the same inflorescence.

5. <u>Nutlet morphology</u>

For illustrative purposes nutlet morphology was recorded with a SEM, but quantitative characters were measured by means of a dissecting microscope. These measurements are presented in Table 7 (with diagnostic features underlined) and in the species treatments in Chapter 5.

In surface view the nutlet had a basic ovate to obovate shape in all the southern African species, but was rather elongate in <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> and <u>C. zuluensis</u> (P1.

7.3). It was markedly clawed (stipitate) in the following species: narrowly so in <u>C. zuluensis</u> (Pl. 7.3) and <u>C.</u> <u>mossii</u>. broadly so in <u>C. glomerabilis</u> (Pl. 7.4). In <u>C.</u> <u>ecklonii</u> the claw was expanded basally into a foot-like structure (Pl. 7.6). In the remaining species the claw was short or absent (Pl. 7.5).

In all the species the nutlet was surmounted by a short to long beak which passed abruptly into the style base. This transition was visible under the dissecting microscope due to a change in colour and surface ornamentation. The beak and style base were usually straight (P1. 7.4) to slightly bent (P1. 7.6) but were markedly twisted in <u>C. aethiopica</u> (P1. 7.2) and <u>C. cognata</u>.

The shape in cross-section was a direct reflection of stigma number, with the distigmatic species having biconvex nutlets (or with one surface flat) and the tristigmatic species having trigonous nutlets. In <u>C. sp. nov.</u> the nutlets were very shallowly trigonous.

6. <u>Nutlet surface</u>

Nutlet surface appeared very similar in all the species. It was glabrous throughout, and usually the outlines of cells were visible, due to the contents being shrunken, exposing the shape and structure of the anticlinal walls. In all the species the cells were arranged in longitudinal files and were irregular in shape and size, but had straight-sided to slightly curved anticlinal walls, forming

five- to seven-sided polygons (P1. 8.1). Additionally in the centre of each cell a cone-shaped structure was visible (the nature of this structure is investigated below, point 7), which was variable in size, depending on the species. In <u>C.</u> <u>zuluensis</u> and <u>C. burchelliana</u> the cone apices stood above the anticlinal cell walls (P1. 8.3), while in <u>C. sylvatica</u> and <u>C. sp. nov.</u> they were hardly visible (P1. 9.5), being immersed in the cell contents.

7. Acetolyzed nutlet surface

O

0

Acetolysis removed cell debris and outer periclinal and anticlinal cell walls of the pericarp epidermis, revealing the underlying silica bodies. Overall position of the cell was found to influence the shape and size of the silica body, thus it was important to compare them in a constant position (median, on an abaxial facet of nutlet) for all the samples (Pl. 10.2 - 10.6).

7.1. <u>General description of the southern African</u> <u>species</u>

Basic shape of silica body: Five- to seven-sided polygonal flat plate. At distal and proximal ends of fruit, silica bodies become rectangular (Pl. 10.5 & 10.2). Shape of plate somewhat variable and depending to some extent on relative position of silica body on fruit (Pl. 10.2 - 10.6). When plates not in close contact, intervening middle lamellae (of anticlinal walls) evidently also silicified, and connected to main silica body by numerous small rods (P1. 9.2). In all species plates more widely separated near distal end of fruit. Generally towards distal end amount of silica per cell gradually reduced, disappearing altogether at style base (P1. 10.5).

Ornamentation: Present except on angles of trigonous nutlets (P1. 10.3). Usually a single more-or-less central cone (P1. 8.2), but sometimes, and more frequently in proximal cells, silica bodies bearing two or three large cones (P1. 10.2). Shape and height of cones depending to some extent on relative position of the silica body on fruit. In biconvex fruits where cones tending to be low and rounded over most of fruit surface (P1. 8.6), cones increasing in height towards edges of fruit. <u>Satellite</u> <u>cones</u>: When present, small, occurring at margins of plates (P1. 9.2).

7.2. Characters that distinguish the speries

Basic shape of silica body: Basal plates flat in most species, but domed in some species (Pl. 9.4), and in some species thickened (or possibly upturned) at margins (Pl. 8.2). In a median position plates in close contact in most species (Pl. 8.4), but widely separated in others (Pl. 8.6). Ornamentation: Central cone ranging from tall and slender in one species (Pl. 8.4), to conical in several species (Pl. 8.1) to low and rounded in other species (Pl. 8.6 & 9.6). Satellite cones: Absent in most species, present in two
species (P1. 9.2).

These characters are also summarized in Table 9. Diagnostic features are underlined. 57

D. DISCUSSION

Ċ,

0

1. Leaf lamina surface

Some characters of the lamina surface proved to be diagnostic, or were at least useful in recognizing the taxonomic groups, for example, the unusual shape of the intercostal cells in <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u>. <u>C. zuluensis</u> and the putative hybrid of <u>C. zuluensis</u>. Unfortunately no data exist for the remaining species of Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u>; it would be necessary to obtain preserved material of all the species to determine whether this character state is constant throughout the subgenus.

Although the morphology of the stomatal complexes in <u>C.</u> <u>MOSSII</u> was unique among the southern African species, Metcalfe (1971) reports a similar morphology in <u>C. vendula</u> Huds., a European representative of Section <u>Maximae</u>. to which <u>C. mossii</u> also belongs. Once again, it would be necessary to obtain preserved material of all the species of the section in order to confirm that this character state is constant throughout.

Similarly, in <u>Canustro-africana</u> the morphology of the abaxial lamina surface, particularly of the stomatal complexes, was unique among the southern African species. It is likely that this morphology is common to the remaining species of the section, because papillae are visible on the abaxial lamina surface in specimens in PRE of <u>C.</u> <u>papillosissima</u> Nelmes, a Tropical African representative, even at 20x magnification.

Under SEM, stomatal frequency and distribution was difficult to estimate due to the limited field of view and limited size of the sample. Standley (1986), in her light microscope study of these characters in <u>Carcx aquatilis</u>, utilized epidermal replicas. This rapid, simple and inexpensive technique would be worthwhile pursuing for the southerm African species.

2. Perigynium morphology

Perigynium characters were very important indeed for diagnosis, permitting the construction of a key to the species based almost solely on these characters. Many of them, however, were qualitative (e.g. perigynium texture), and these, plus the quantitative characters were assessed mainly by means of the dissecting microscope.

3. Perigynium surface

Some of the characters of the perigynium surface proved to be diagnostic for the southern African species. When extended to the species of a wider geographical area they ceased to be diagnostic, but indicated relationships between species. For example, the shape of the surface papillae was very different in <u>C. acutiformis</u> and <u>C. austro-africana</u>. The

latter, however, appeared very similar to those illustrated in Haines & Lye (1983, p. 379) for <u>C. papillosissima</u> Nelmes. <u>C. austro-africana</u> and <u>C. papillosissima</u> are indeed very closely related and it will be necessary to re-examine this relationship when undertaking a revision of all the African species.

The morphology and locality of the papillae in <u>C, sp</u>. <u>nov</u>, was different from those of specimens of any other related species available in PRE, thus providing further proof that this spec es has developed in isolation and is not closely related to any other species within Subgenus Primocarex.

It is likely that the distinctive morphology of the scabrid hairs in <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u>, <u>C. zul ensis</u> and the putative hybrid of <u>C. zuluensis</u> will also be present in other members rf Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u>.

4. Rostrum and style morphology

O

õ

Without exception, characters of the rostrum were diagnostic when used in combination with other confirmatory characters, but were of little use in indicating phylogenetic relationships. From the literature (e.g. Kukenthal, 1909) it is apparent that thus is also true of the remainder of the penus.

The function of the rostrum is clearly protective, as it ensheaths the style base, protecting it from mechanical damage. Additionally many marshland species lave car.ilaginous rostrum teeth which may protect the undispersed fruits from grazing mammals: the fruits are spirally arranged within the infructescence and the sharp teeth point in all directions. Equally, the rostrum teeth and their associated scabrid hairs could have an important function in ectozoochory, leading to long-range dispersal by birds and short-range dispersal by mammals.

The selective advantage of the distignatic versus the tristignatic condition is unclear. It has certainly arisen several times in the evolutionary history of the genus, occurring throughout Subgenus <u>Vignea</u> and in one section of Subgenus <u>Carex</u>, as well as in Subgenus <u>Primocarex</u>. The fact that a suspected hybrid between two tristignatic species of Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u> has both conditions in one inflorescence, demonstrates that it is genetically a relatively unstable character. In this respect, for example, species of Subgenus <u>Vignea</u> could quite easily be derived from species of Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u>. as hypothesized by Nelmes (1952).

5. <u>Nutlet morphology</u>

Some nutlet characters were important for diagnostic purposes. For example, the twisted beak and style base were very useful in distinguishing poorly collected specimens of <u>C. aethiopica</u> and <u>C. clavata</u>.

It would probably have been possible to construct a key to the southern African species ba ed solely on nutlet characters, provided that a larger sample had been measured.

This was done for the South Scandinavian species by Nilsson & Hjelmqvist (1967). They found that shape, colour and surface t sture were very stable characters, but that nutlet size and beak length were very variable, especially in species which have a wide ecological and geographical range. A similar result was obtained in the present study, but much more fieldwork is required to confirm this.

6. <u>Nutlet surface</u>

On its own, nutlet surface morphcrogy was not very useful diagnostically. This is evidently because the nutlet surface is protected throughout its maturation period by the perigynium, and is therefore not subject to environmentally induced evolutionary changes.

One useful character was the relative height of the anticlinal walls of the epidermal cells, as seen in <u>C.</u> <u>svlvatica</u>, and of the height of the cone on the silica body, as seen in <u>C. zvluensis</u>. It would be important to use a larger sample and to measure parameters accurately under SEM to obtain a better indication of disjunctions in these characters.

7. Acetolyzed nutlet surface

0

Toivonen & Timonen (1976) studied fruits of species of Subgenus <u>Vignes</u> which had been cleaned ultrasonically tc expose the silica bodies. Although in the present study slightly different methods were employed, similar results

were obtained.

For some taxa the shape and size of the silica bodies appeared to be diagnostic, or to provide indications of phylogenetic relationships. An example of the former is the unique domed shape of the basal plate in <u>C. ucklonii</u>, and of the latter is the very similar shape of the silica bodies in <u>C. burchelliana</u> and <u>C. monotropa</u>, indicating that the two species are fairly closely related. It would be desirable to extrapolate these observations, but unfortunately very few of the total number of species of <u>Carex</u> have been studied in this mannes.

Ragonese <u>et al.</u> (1984), discussed and illustrated the origin and development of silica bodies in the pericarp of <u>Rhynchospora</u> Vahl. (This genus is placed in Tribe Rhynchosporeae, which is usually considered to be fairly closely related to Cariceae.) According to these authors, the silica body arises in the epidermal cells as a thickening on the inner periclinal cell wall. It grows centripetally into the cell, later becoming isolated from the protoplast by a transverse septum comprising cellulose, lignin, cutin and silica. The epidermis (exocarp) thus becomes bistratified, with the outer layer containing tannin compounds and the inner layer curtaining silica bodies.

E. <u>CONCLUSIONS</u>

C

0

Some micromorphological characters were useful for diagnosing the southern African species or groups of

species. While they were not practical "key" characters, they could be used in conjunction with macromorphological and anatomical characters to make taxonomic decisions at the species level. They could also be used very effectively both to indicate phylogenetic groupings of the southern African species and their relationships with species outside southern Africa.

0

Table 8. Micromorphological characters of the leaf lamina that distinguish the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.

Features	Subgernus Indocar ex			Test												
						- 1	Subgenus Europ									here
2	Aiculata		C. CIVIDA	C. elonerabili	C. austro-	C. MINI	C. MENIOPICA	5 sylvatica	C. burchellian	C. exclorit	C. sonotrosa	C. comata	C. acutifornis	. clavata	C. subinflata	and ministers
LENF LANINA Entrale -						-		1								
PL/sing - ontryrence of papillar prickles:	Mail-developed icties along and of length	Hell-developed prickles along most of length	Smooth to pap- illate, with a few priction at leaf apus	Smooth to cap- illate, with a few prickles at leaf	Meil-developed prichles alone most o length	Smooth to pap- illate, with a few prickles a leaf	Smooth to pap- illate, with a few prickles at leaf apex	Smooth to pap- illate, with a few prickles a leaf apex	Smooth to pap- illate, with a few prickles at leaf apes	Smooth to pap- Vilate, with a few prickles at	Smooth to pap- illate, with a few prickles at leaf	Mail developed prickles along most of lungth	Smooth to pap- illate, with a few prickles a leaf apen	Smooth to pap- illate, with a few prickles a leaf aper	Smooth to pap- illate, with a t few prictles a	Smooth to pap- illate, with a to prictles at two prictles at
to prickle	- indext 30*	About 30*	Report 30*	About 30*	Alenst an esse	Minhout 30=	Read 30*	About 30*	About 30*		About 30*	Real Str	Abou. 30*	thout 30*	About 30*	Rout 30*
folgiticular wa	Vestigial or Kiseni	Vestigual or	Vestigial or	Vestigial or absent	Present or eden tal and shartal perfaces	Tresent on abu tal surface	Present on adam tal and mantal periates	Vestigiat or absent	Vestigial or	Vestigial or	Vestigial or absent	Vestigial or	ial and abarral	on ada	Present on adaption	antigi si ar alsoni
Serface Recordings Relations	Present on adas ial and abastal ated with costal cones	Present on adar- ial and obstial Burfaces, associated with costal comes	ABrant.	Altsant	ilteant	drunt.	Nitsent .	Raet.	Absen!	Abrant	Absent.	Present, scattered over adar- ial and abarral surfaces, sore	Absent	Rount	Risen)	Riet
Surface - accurrence of papillers	Rhaint.	Runt.	Mari al	Absent	Abassal	Mainly abayial (adaptal: a few associated with stomatal compl- eres)	Bauk	Abum!	Abunt.	Masent	Ramt	tal Absent	Abazia]	Abari al	Abaxia)	Rest.
<u>Ripperta -</u> distribuciono	Rhanial	Rarial	Mental	Marial	Basial	Aharial, plus about sis sud admial roos or admial surface	Abasia)	Bata!	Abassal	Buria)	Abaxial, with one submarginal row on adamial	Abarial	Abaxıal	iibax : al	Man(a)	Maeriat
<u>Denstal complex</u> <u>Wencription</u> :	Nor nut	litraul	Normal	Roraal	Deverse ched by the to four long terros papilitae	Overarched by four trimedia papillae (these larger on abar- tal surface)	Her auf	Roraal	formi	Nor sai	trai	Narail	Persel	Noraal	Mernal	Nitual
Maniflary cells outer our faces	Flush with Cells	Flush with surrounding	Flush with fi corrounding s calls c	Fluck with Furnanding cells	terketly doned, ireconcly with explile at instal and of ath call	<u>Stoma slightly</u>	Flush with Surrounding cells	Flush with surr- Junding cells	Flush with surrounding cells	Flush with a burrounding s cells	ilesh with arrounding Hile	Flush with surrownding cells	Flush with surrounding cells	Flush with surrounding cells	Flush with surrounding cells	Flush with swircunding
alls of inter- mital zone of design and derais	Marrise at prop- inst end, broad- ming, the distal ming, share surface downed	Harrow at arm- mail and, iroan- ming, in distal and, where arrian down	inctangular to 1	nctangular to n	actangular to guare	Anctangular is Muars	Pectangular te	Arctangular tu square	Bectangular to 1	Nuctar gular to p	actangular to quare	Nictangular to	Rectangular to square	Aectangular te square	Rectangular to square	Rectangular te squars

C

C

						Tex										
Features	Bilgens litteren		Subgenus Vierna		Sudgenue Caree									18	Sity. Princeres	
-	einiste l	C. culanaia	L. BUIM	C. downeilis	te mire-	C. ogsii	C. milligits	L MURIL	C. beshilling	Cochionii	C. Antone		C. 1041(-211	C. sleveta	C- MAINTINA	
LIVACI OFFICE					ks-	-									1.	
Milica Judy -	Flat with us-	Flat	Flat	Flet.	ne.	Flat with up-	Flat	Flat <u>eith serie</u> Sterief serie	Fin			Flat	flat	Fant	flat	71at
Cartact mith adapted allater	lieve	Car	Close			Cime	Class	Date	<u>Rit slave</u>	Clune	St.C.R	Urse	Claim -	Cine	U.;##	1.
Central com -	Canics*	Nartesta 1111	Low and reacted	Las and rearded	Les and reacted	Los and rounded	Emical	Camical	Conical	Caraita)	tion and rounded	Camical	Cancal	Las as recent	facinal .	lar all randat
istellite smess	terel .	Runt	Runt	2101	Anunt	Part	Amut		haven.	Raet	tent	think .		Paurit,	At sunt	Nort .

Table 9. Micromorphological characters of acetolyzed fruitsthat distinguish the southern African species ofCarex L.

Plate 2.

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Scanning Electron Micrographs of leaf lamina epidermides. Distal end of tamina on left.

- Plate 2.1: Abaxial surface: Margin with prickles present, prickles almost appressed; surface papillate (<u>C.</u> <u>austro-africana</u>, <u>Reid 1368</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 278 µm.
- Plate 2.2: Adaxial surface: Margin with prickles present. barb of prickle at 30°; surface with prickles present (<u>C. cognata</u>, <u>Reid 1210</u>, J, PRE). Scale $har = 270 \mu m$.
- Plate 2.3: Abaxial surface: Margin papillate (C. <u>elomerabilis</u>. <u>Reid 1157</u>, J, PKE). Scale bar = 278 µm.
- P'ate 2.4: Abaxial surface: Epicuticular wax present, copious; papillae present; stomatal complex without overarching papillae (<u>C. aethiopica</u>, <u>Reid 1144</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 20 µm.
- Plate 2.5: Adaxial surface: Epicuticular wax present; cells of intercostal zone rectangular; cell walls sinuous (<u>C. austro-africana</u>. <u>Reid 1368</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar 22 µm.
- Plate 2.5: Adaxial surface: Epicuticular wax absent; cells of intercostal zone narrow at proximal end, widened and with surface domed at distal end (<u>C. spicato-</u> <u>paniculata</u>. <u>Reid 1188</u>, J. PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.



Plate 3.

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Scanning Electron Micrographs of leaf lamina epidermides. Distal end of lamina on left.

Plate 3.1: Adaxial surface: Single submarginal row of stomata present (<u>C. monotropa</u>, <u>Killick 4593</u>, PRE, ROML). Scale bar = 20 µm.

- Plate 3.2: Abaxia: surl'ace: Stomatal complex overarched by four long narrow papillae; subsidiary cells with domed outer surface (<u>C. austrc-africana</u>, <u>Reid 1368</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 20 µm.
- Plate 3.3 & 4: Adaxial surface: Six submarginal rows of stomata present; stomatal complexes (one is arrowed in No. 3) overarched by four triangular papillae (No. 3 damaged, No. 4 with a fungal hypha) (<u>C. mossii</u>. <u>Reid</u> 1204. J, PRE). Scale bars: 3 = 278 µm; 4 = 20 µm.

Plate 3.5 5 5: Abaxial surface: Stomata more frequent with larger papillae than on adaxial surface; one stomatal complex arrowed in No. 5 (<u>C. mossii</u>, <u>Reid 1204</u>, J, FRE). Scale bars: 5 = 278 µm; 6 = 20 µm.



and the second

Plate 4.

roll

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Scanning Electron Micrographs of leaf lamina epidermides. Distal end of lamina on left,

D

- Plate 4.1: Abaxial surface: Morphology of costal zone (arrowed) with silica cells (<u>C. sp. nov.</u> <u>Reid 1337</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = 28 μm.
- Plate 4.2: A axial surface: Morphology of silica body (<u>C.</u> <u>acutul mis</u>, <u>Reid 1367</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = U µm.
- Piate 4.3: Adaxial surface: Costal zone with associated prickles (<u>C. zuluensis</u>, <u>Reid 1192</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 μm.
- Plate 4.4: Adaxial surface: Cells of intercostal zone square to rectangular (<u>C. aethiopica</u>, <u>Reid 1144</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = 63 µm.
- Plate 4.5: Adaxial surface, oblique view: Internal morphology of sinuous cell walls; position of one of the minute silica bodies arrowed (<u>C. sp. nov.</u>, <u>Reid</u> <u>1337</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = 20 µm.

Plate 4.6: Adaxial surface, oblique view: Internal merphology of traf lamina (<u>C. burchelliana. Reid</u> <u>1115</u>. J. PRE, - Male bar = 38 µm.



a

Plate 5.

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Scanning Electron Micrographs of perigynia. Distal end of perigynium on left.

Plate 5.1: Perigynium base not stipitate, without a callus; rostrum abrupt, short, margin scabrid, apex shallowly bidertate (<u>C. burchelliana</u>, <u>Reid 1121</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 952 µm.

Plate 5.2: Perigynium bas, bearing a callus (arrowed) (C. zuluensis, Reid 1192, J, PRE). Scale bar = $377 \mu m$.

Plate 5.3: Perigynium base stipitate (<u>C. mossii</u>, <u>Lowrev</u> <u>5.n. sub PRE 60417</u>, PRE). Scale bar = 870 µm.

Plate 5.4 & 6: Perigynium erostrate; surface mainly glabrous with a zone of short conical hairs near distal end (No. 6: contral cells have domed surfaces due to 2 electron 2 mage) (<u>C. sp. nov.</u>, <u>Reid 1337</u>, J, PRE). Scale bana: 4 = 370 μm; 6 = 19 μm.

Plate 5.5: Rostrum margin winged, scabrid (<u>C. glomerabilis</u>, <u>Reid 1137</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 364 µm.



Plate 6.

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Scanning Electron Micrographs of perigynia. Distal end of perigynium on left.

Plate 6.1: Perigynium surface scabrid in distal half; nerves 4--6, submarginal (<u>C. spicato-paniculata</u>, <u>Hilliard &</u> <u>Burtt 14221</u>, PRE). Scale bar = 909 µm.

Plate 6.2: Scabrid hairs impressed near base (Putative hybrid: <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> X <u>C. zulvensis</u>. <u>Reid</u> <u>1186</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.

Plate 6.3 & 4: Perigynium inconspicuously nerved, parillate, with solid papillae (<u>C. austro-africana</u>, <u>Deall 2578</u>, PRE). Scale bars: 3 = 625 µm; 4 = 38 µm.

Plat. 6.5: Rostrum deeply bidentate (<u>C. cognata</u>, <u>Reid 1210</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 1000 µm.

Plate 6.6: Perigyniu: papillate, with hollow papillae (<u>C.</u> acutiformis, <u>Reid 1367</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.

0

C.



Plate 7.

Southern African species of <u>Cares</u> L.: Scanning Electron Micrographs of perigynia and fruits. Distal end of perigynium and fruit on left.

Flate 7.1: Morphology of rhachilla (arrowed) in spacies of Subgenus Primocarex (C. sp. nov., Reid 1337, J, PRE). Scale bar = 571 µm.

Plate 7.2; Basal spikelet: Morphology of rhachilla (arrowed); nutlet obovate, not clawed, style base twisted (<u>C. aethiopica, Fourcade 4135</u>, BOL, PRE, STE). Scale bar = 870 µm.

Plate 7.3: Nutlet elliptic, narrowly clawed (<u>C. zuluensis</u>, <u>Reid 1192</u>, J. PRE), Scale bar = 667 µm.

Plate 7.4: Nutlet square, broadly clawed; style base straight (<u>C. glomerabilis</u>, <u>Coleman 707</u>, PRE), Scale bar = 526 µm.

Plate 7.5: Nutlet obovate, not clawed (<u>C. austro-africana</u>, <u>Deall 2578</u>, PRE). Scale bar = 465 µm.

Plate 7.6: Nutlet obovate, clawed, claw with a foot-like base; style base slightly bent (<u>C. ecklonii</u>, <u>Reid</u> <u>1128</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 571 µm.

0



Plate 8.

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Scanning Electron Micrographs of fruits and acetolyzed fruits. Distal end of fruit on left.

- Plate 8.1: Cell outlines comprising 5--7-sided polygons; central cones lower than anticlinal walls, conical (<u>C.</u> <u>spicato-paniculata</u>. <u>Hilliard & Burtt 14221</u>. NU, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.
- Plate 8.2: Acetolyzed: Basal plates in close contact with adjacent plates; margins of plates thickened (or upturned); central cones conical (<u>C. spicato-</u> <u>paniculata</u>. <u>Hilliard & Burtt 14221</u>, NU, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.
- Plate 8.3: Central cones higher than anticlinal walls (<u>C.</u> <u>zuluensis</u>. <u>Reid 1192</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 μ m.
- Plate 8.4: Acetolyzed: Basal plates flat; central cones markedly tall and slender (<u>C. zuluensis</u>, <u>Reid 1192</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.
- Plate 8.5: (<u>C. austro-africana</u>, <u>Deall 2578</u>, PRE). Scale bar = 38 μ m.
- Plate 8.6: Acetolyzed: Adjacent basal plates not in close contact; central cone low and rounded (<u>C. austro-</u> <u>africana</u>, <u>Deall 2578</u>, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.



25×10

Plate 9.

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Scanning Electron Micrographs of fruits and acetolyzed fruits. Distal end of fruit on left.

- Plate 9.1: (<u>C. burchelliana</u>, <u>Reid 1121</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.
- Plate 9.2: Acetolyzed: Small satellite cones on margin of basal plate (<u>C. burchelliana</u>, <u>Reid 1121</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.
- Plate 9.3: (<u>C. ecklonii</u>. <u>Reid 1128</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.
- Plate 9.4: Acetolyzed: Basal plate domed (<u>C. ecklonii</u>. <u>Reid</u> <u>1128</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.
- Plate 9.5: Central cone not visible (<u>C. sp. nov.</u>, <u>Reid</u> <u>1337</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = $38 \mu m$.
- Plate 9.6: Acetolyzed. (<u>C. sp. nov</u>. <u>Acocks 18659</u>. PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.

O

0

o



Plat_ .t.

Souther: African species of <u>Crar</u>L.: Scanning Electron Micrographs of fruits and acetolyzed fruits. Distal end of fruit on left.

Plate 10.1: (<u>C. aethiopica</u>. <u>Reid 1144</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = 38 µm.

Plate 10.2 - 6: Acetolyzed: Series to show variation in shape of silica body, depending on position on fruit. 2: Basal region. 3: On angle of trigonous fruit. 4 and 6: Median position, abaxial face. 5: Stylar region. (<u>C. aethiopica</u>. Fourcade 4135. BOL, PRE, STE). Scale bars: 2 - 4 = 38 µm; 5 = 13 µm; 6 = 19 µm.

O

C



CHAPTER 4. ANATOMICAL CHAR CTERS

A. INTRODUCTION

A limited investigation of the anatomy of leaves and culms of the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> was carried out, in order to test taxonomic decisions that were mainly based on morphological characters. Anatomical characters were not utilized in the generation of keys and descriptions, because they are not practical characters to use for routine identifications.

Kuekenthai (1909) referred only briefly to the anatom: of <u>Carex</u> in his monograph of the genus. Jermy & Tutin (1968) in their handbook on the British species of <u>Carex</u>, included plan diagrams of transverse sections of leaves and culms. <u>Carex</u> anatomy was reviewed in some detail by Metcalfe (1971), who also listed all the available literature on <u>Carex</u> anatomy (pp. 146--149) but no southern African species was fully discussed, Elthough the two introduced species, <u>C.</u> <u>acutiformis</u> Ehrh. and <u>C. sylvatica</u> Huds., and the culm of <u>C.</u> <u>spicato-paniculata</u> were included. For the European species, Schultze-Motel (1980) includeN plan diagrams of transverse sections of culms and some transverse sections of leaves.

To ensure standardization, Metcalfe's terminology (pp. 2--29, 107--149; 1971) and order of discussion is utilized in the present study.

B. METERIALS AND METHODS

Leaves were sampled at about mid-point and culms at midpoint of an internode mid-way along their length. All of the southern African taxa except <u>C. divisa</u> Huds. were sampled. Material was placed into FAA in the field. In the laboratory the material was dehydrated. embedded in paraffin wax (melting point 56°C), sectioned on a rotary microtome, stained and mounted. The procedure is outlined in Appendix J. Voucher specimens are marked in Appendix 1.1 with an asterisk (*).

Material of one critical taxon, which did not provide good results by the above method, was fixed in osmium tetroxide, embedded in Spurr's resin (see Appendix 3), and sections were cut by Dr. M.L. Frean on a Reichert ultramicrotome. The sections were stained with toluidine blue, coverslipped and mounted with XPD.

Photomicrographs were taken on an Olympus VANOX-S using Ilford PANF film and white filters, excepting the sections cut on the ultramicrotome, for which an additional blue filter was used.

Due to the unusual anatomy of these plants (i.e. heavily sclerified tissue alternating with air cavities) the sections obtained were far from perfect. Had this difficulty been anticipated, time would have been allowed for treatment of the material with Mollifex to soften the strengthening tissue: the material must be soaked for a minimum of three

months.

C. <u>RESULTS</u>

1. Lemina Transverse Section

1.1. <u>General description of the southern African</u> species

Plan: (From adaxial to abaxial surface) Cuticle; adaxial epidermis; ground tissue comprising vascular bundles associated with sclerenchyma, alternating with mesophyll containing chlorenchyma surrounding large air cavities; abaxial epidermis; cuticle. Cuticle: Thick; generally of equal thickness on adaxial and abaxial surfaces, but very thin on small cells overlying sclerenchyma strands (P1. 11.4). Epidermis: Cell shape round to square, smaller where overlying sclerenchyma strands, adaxial cells diminishing in size towards the margins. Papillae: When present, one per epidermal cell. Bulliform cells: Situated in median adaxial groove, welf-developed, replacing normal epidermal cells (P1. 11.2 & 11.6). In tranverse section appearing greatly enlarged longitudinally and less enlarged laterally. Uppermost 1-few layers (depending on the species) continuous, lowermost generally discontinuous, interrupted by selerenchyma. Stomata: Fairly uniform in size and shape; guard cells, subsidiary cells and substorate! cavities small (Pl. 11.8). Solerencizze: Associated with vascular tissue, with an additional strand occurring adaxially near lamina

margin, subjacent to epidermis (Pi. 11.4). Primary (or median) vascular bundle situated in keel accompanied abaxially by a very large descending-crescentiform sclerenchyma girder, and adaxially by a smaller cap of sclerenchyma (Pl. 11.2). Secondary vascular bundles always accompanied abaxially by sclerenchyma girders (P1. 11.5), but shape and size of adaxial sclerenchyma depending on species. Minor vascular bundles with varying amounts of associated sclerenchyma, depending on size of bundle. Interconnected pits in walls of fibres clearly visible at 50x magnification. Mesophyll: Several types: (1) Parenchyma sometimes present, associated with adaxial sclerenchyma strands (P1. 11.5). (2) Chlorenchyma: not radiate, confined to two to four cell layers surrounding each air cavity (Pl. 11.5). Cells rounded to polygonal and slightly lobed. (3) Mesophyll parenchyma cells (that ultimately give rise to air cavities) very large and thin-walled and apparently lacking chloroplasts. (4) Mesophyll cells surrounding commissural vascular bundles (Pl. 11.7) intermediate in size between types (2) and (3) and apparently containing some chloroplasts; lobate. Air manifies (lysigenous spaces); Large, well-developed, occurring in mesophyll between consecutive vascular bundles; decreasing in size towards lamina margin (Pl. 11.3). <u>Vascular bundles</u>: Collateral, occurring in single row parallel to long axis of lamina, alternating major (large) and minor (small) bundles. Major bundles tending to be elongate, minor bundles tending to be

round. Protoxylem, metaxylem and phloem easily distinguished (P1. 11.5). In each bundle two laterally situated metaxylem vessels occur, sometimes appearing to be more than two due to the overlapping ends of two cells being visible. Major bundles, especially median ones, with large cavity apically in protoxylem. Commissural bundles occur at right angles to long wris of lamima, linking parallel bundles; spiral thickening of elements clearly visible (Pl. 11.7). Bundle sheath: Double, with fibrous inner sheath and parenchymatous outer sheath (P1. 11.5). In majo, bundles outer sheath interrupted by sclerenchyma both abaxially and adaxially, in minor bundles sheath almost continuous (P1. 11.8). In transverse section thickening on outer walls of inner sheath cells much thinner or absent, appearing U-shaped. Secretory cells: When present, occur in the mesophyll, usually lining air cavities but sometimes dispersed through chlorenchyma (P1. 11.5).

1.2. Characters that distinguish the species

Profile. Crescentiform in one species (P1. 11.3), keeled and flat to V-shaped in two species, keeled and flat to broadly flanged in the remaining species (P1. 11.1). In larger species lamina can be described as flat to plicate. Keel: Present and prominent abaxially in all species except one. in which it is absent (P1. 11.3). Keel acute in most species (P1. 11.2), round in one species. <u>Median adaxial</u> **Eroove:** Prominent in must species (P1. 11.2 & 11.6), barely

discernable in one species (Pl. 11.3). Thickness: Usually thickest at middle and tapered to margins, but in species with flanged or plicate laminae, also thickened at angle of flange (P1. 11.1). In one species lamina grooved above vascular bundles, especially abaxially (P1. 11.4). Epidermis: Adaxial cells usually more than twice as large as abaxial cells (Pl. 11.8) but only slightly larger in one species (Pl. 11.4). Papillae: Alsent in most species; very prominent villiform papila. occur abaxially in three species (Pl. 11.5); less prominent papillae, formed by doming of cell outer surface, occur abaxially in three species. Adaxial papillae occur in one species. Bulliform cells: Comprise a single continuous layer in some species (P1, 11.2 & 11.3), a single continuous layer plus a discontinuous subjacent layer in most species, two continuous layers in two species, and three continuous layers plus one discontinuous layer in one species (Pl. 11.6). Stomata: Usually flush with surrounding epidermal cells (Pl. 11.8); sunken in one species, where also overarched by papillae (Pl. 11.5). Sclerenchyma: Secondary vascular bundles accompanied adaxially by baculiform girders in seven species (P1. 11.4), and by V-shaped strands in the remaining species (Pl. 11.5). In species with flanged laminae, adaxial sclerenchyma strand in angle of flange much larger than in remaining groups of sclerenchyma. Mesophyll: (Type (4)) Commissural bundles sectioned in three species: Associated mesophyll cells with narrow villiform lobes in

O

two species and with wide lobes in one species (Pl. 11.7). <u>Air cavities</u>: Round to square in tran versi section in most species (Pl. 11.4 & 11.5); in three species width about twice the height (i.e elliptic) (Pl. 11.8). <u>Vascular</u> <u>bundles</u>: Usually occurring about midway between the two epidermides (Pl. 11.4), but in three species minor bundles especially, closer to abaxial epidermis (Pl. 11.5). Metaxylem elements much larger than protoxylem elements in all species (Pl. 11.5) except two (Pl. 11.4). <u>Bundle sheath</u>: In minor vascular bundles, outer sheath with cells conspicuously large in three species (Pl. 11.8); not conspicuously large is the remaining species (Pl. 11.7). <u>Secretory cells</u>: Absent in three species (Pl. 11.7), fairly common in most species (Pl. 11.2, 11.4, 11.5 & 11.8), and very frequent in one species.

These characters are also summarized in Table 8, where diagnos ic characters are underlined.

2. Culm Transverse Section

2.1. General description of the southern African

<u>species</u>

O

<u>Plan</u>: (In a centripetal direction) Cuticle; epidermis; sclerenchyma girders, numerous peripheral major and minor vascular bundles and sclerenchyma caps alternating with chlorenchyma and air cavities; central parenchymatous ground tissue with or without minor vascular bundles. <u>Cuticle</u>: About same thickness as in leaf lamina, also usually thinner

on small epidermal cells overlying sclerenchyma girders. Epidermis: Cells about same size and shape as abaxial epidermal cells of lamina. Stomata: In transverse section about same shape and size as stomata in lamina. Sclerenchyma: Large strands generally present at angles of culm, either independently or associated with vascular bundles (P1. 12.3). Large triangular girders generally associated with peripheral major vascular bundles (P1. 12.6). In most species, girders occasionally interrupted by parenchyma (P1. 12.8). Sclerenchyma caps present at xylem poles of peripheral major bundles and at xylem and phloem poles of peripheral minor and inner minor bundles (Pl. 12.2). Assimilatory tissue: Chlorenchyma confined to two to four cell layers subjacent to epidermis, on outer edges of air cavities (Pl. 12.3 & 12.6). Secretory cells: When present, more common in tissue surrounding air cavities, also occurring in central ground tissue. <u>Vascular bundles</u>: Very similar to those in lamina. Commissural bundles also occur (P1. 12.7). In shape major bundles generally slightly elongate (Pl. 12.1), minor bundles round (Pl. 12.4). Major bundles, especially in larger species, with conspicuously large cavities in protoxylem (Pl. 12.8). Ground tissue: Either undifferentiated with central parenchyma not differing markedly in shape and size from peripheral parenchyma (Pl. 12.1 & 12.2), or differentiated with central parenchyma comprising very large cells with large aircavities (PL. 12.5).

2.2. Characters that distinguish the species

Profile: Triangular with round angles in most species (Pl. 12.1), but with angles acute in three species; sides straight to convex in most species, but in three species at least one side concave. Profile circular and ribbed in one species (Pl. 12.5). Stomata: Usually flush with surrounding epidermal cells; sunken in one species (Pl. 12.6), Sclerenchyma: Large strands usually present at angles of culm (F1. 12.3); absent in one species (P1. 12.1). Large triangular girders usually associated with peripheral major vascular bundles(Pl. 12.2), but in one species (in which the culm is supported by a leaf sheath) girders only present opposite thin-tissued adaxial portion of leaf sheath (Pl. 12.1). Air cavities: Usually round to square in shape (Pl. 12.1); vertically elongated in two species (Pl. 12.8). Very large in most species (Pl. 12.1), of medium size in four species (P1. 12.2) and very small in three species (P1. 12.6). Secretory cells: Present in seven species (Pl. 12.8), absent in the remaining species (Pl. 12.2). Vascular bundles: Major ones usually slightly elongated (Pl. 12.1); markedly elongated in two species (P1, 12.8). Ground tissue: Undifferentiated with many minor vascular bundles scattered throughout in two species (P1. 12.2 & 12.4); undifferentiated with minor vascular bundles confined to a few rows on outer edge in six species (P1. 12.1); differentiated with a few rows of minor vascular bundles confined to outer, smaller-celled tissue in five species;
differentiated, without minor vascular bundles in two species (P1. 12.5).

These characters are also summarized in Table 11, where diagnostic features are underlined.

D. DISCUSSION

The interaction between structure, morphology and function is very complex, meriting a much more intensive investigation than the present study afforded. However the results that were obtained, especially the general description, correlated well with Metcalfe's results. They are useful for general comparative purposes, as shown by the great number of distinguishing characters listed in Tables 10 and 11. They also aided in the interpretation of surface morphological features, especially of characters such as stomatal complexes and papillae, and elucidated the nature of the supporting tissue in such prominent features as the keel of the lamina. It was borne in mind that, like morphology, anatomy is under genetic control, and that to provide conclusive evidence of discontinuities, a large range of material of each taxon should have been studied. All the souvern African species have a C3 lear lamina anatomy which suggests that they all may have a C_3 photosynthetic pathway.

As well as lamina anatomy having diagnostic value in some cases, culm anatomy (but not lamina anatomy) provided important indications of relationships especially at subgeneric level, within the southern African taxa. Lamina profile was immediately diagnostic in one species, <u>C. sp.</u> <u>nov.</u> as it was the only species with a crescentiform lamina, the remaining species having variously flat, keeled or plicate laminae. Two or more characters in combination could also be diagnostic, e.g. in the iaminae of <u>C. mossii</u> and <u>C. sylvatica</u> sclerenchyma strands rather than girders were associated with the secondary vascular bundles. In addition <u>C. mossii</u> had large spidermal papillae on the abaxial surface, thus even small lamina fragments of <u>C.</u> <u>mossii</u> would be identifiable.

In a recent paper Standley (1990. stressed that while foliar (leaf lamina) anatomical characters were valuable in distinguishing species within a section, these characters alone could not be used as a basis for determining relationships among species or sections, due to a high level of homoplasy, i.e. evolutionary trends within all sections of the group are similar, resulting in the evolution of similar anatomical phenotypes in many apparently unrelated groups.

Culm anatomy supported hypotheses of relationships based on morphological characters. In <u>C. ecklonii</u>. <u>C. burchelljana</u> and <u>C. monotropa</u>. all members of Subgenus <u>Carex</u>. culm anatomy was almost identical. In the culm of the dwarf species <u>C. monotropa</u>. the occurrence of only **u** few sclerenchyma girders, confined to a particular area, could be explained by the Eact that the culm was protected and

supported by leaf sheaths, and the scherenchyma girders occurred only opposite the adaxial, thin-tissued portion of the leaf sheath. In the culms of <u>C. sp. nov.</u> and <u>C.</u> <u>slomerabilis</u> the differentiered ground tissue and mingle peripheral ring of vascular tissue showed that these species were not closely related to the remaining species, and that their placement in separate mubgenera from the remaining species on morphological evidence was justified. Similarly, the culms of <u>C. spicato-paniente</u> and <u>C. zuluensis</u> were distinctive. The undifferentieted ground tissue with vascular bundles scattered aughout, was unlike any of the other species and justified their being placed in a separate subgenus and showed that they were quite closely related.

E. CONCLUSIONS

O

This brief study showed that lamina and culm anatomy provided many very valuable characters, which could bu utilized both diagnostically and in support of theories abort relationships made on morphological grounds. It would be worthwhile insuing this study so cies by species and assessing the intraspecific variation that undoubtedly exists.

Table 10. Anatomical characters of the leaf lamina that distinguish the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.

	100															
Featurns	Subgerius Tridocar		Subgenus Vagnea					-	Subgenus <u>Cares</u>							
	C. mitate- paneculata	C. zuluensis	<u>a. dirisa</u>	C. slamrabilis	<u>C. austro-</u> alricana	<u>C. 109511</u>	E. aethiopica	C. svivatica	C. burchelliana	C. ectionia	C. monotrona	<u> copiata</u>	C. acutiforms	<u>C. clavata</u>	C. mbintlata	C. 10. 101-
UNTURN THANGUEPSE		· · · ·						No. al						1	-	
Protile:	Kaeled, fist to broadly flanged	Emeled, flat to broadly flanged		Keeled, flat *n V-shaped	Kaeled, flat to broadly flanged	plicate	Keeled, flat to broadly flanged	Nameled, flat to broadly ilanged	Keeled, flat to broadly flanged	Keeled, flat to breadly flanged	Xeeled, flat to broadly flanged	Keeled, flat to broanly flanged	Keeled, flat to broadly flanged	fining, flat to plicate	Reeled, flat to broadly flanged	<u>Creicetillors</u>
(<u>m)</u> :	Frominent,	Prominent, acute	Nav	Provinent, acute	Prominent, acute	Prominent, ac te	Prominent, acute	Prominent, acute	Prominent ,	Prosinent, acute	ecute	Provinent. acute	Franiant, rounded	Prominent, acute	Prominent, acute	Rim!
Andreas addressed	Prosinent	Prosinent	Wav	Proximent	Presinent	Provinent	Prominent	Prominent	President	Prosinent	Prominent	Prosinent	Prominent	Prosinent	Prosinent	Barn'y discervible
Dictory	Thickest next ic heal and at angle of flange tapered between to margins	Thickest mest to beel and at angle of flange, tapered between wed to margins	N2xx	Thickest next to keel, tapered to argins	Thickest next to angle of flange, tapered between to margins	Thickest next to beel and at angles of folds, tapered between and to margins	Thickest next to keel and at angle of flange, tapered between and to margins	Trickest ext to keel and at angle of flange, taperei between and to margins	Thickest next to keel and at angle of scange, topered between and to margins	Thickest next to heel and at angle of finge, tapered between and to margins	Thickest and to teel and at angle of flance, tapared between and to margins	Thickest mest to keel and at angle of flange, taparad between and to margins	Thickest next to teel and at angle of flange, tapared between and to margins	Thickest next to keel and at angles of folds, tapered Detween and tu margins	Dictest next to keel and at acgle of flange, tapered between and to margins	Thickest at auddle, taperul to margins, ally abagialist above vascular andle
pidermal cells - relative sizes	Adamici scre Than 2x size of miarial	Adamial more than 2x size of abaxial	Way	Adaxial more than 2x size of abaxial	Adapial Uhan 2x size of abarial	Adaxial more than 2x size of abaxial	Adaxial more than 2x size of abaxial	Adaxial more than 2x size of abaxial	Adaxial more than ~ size of aburtas	Adaxial more than 2x size of abaxial	Adaxial more than 2x size of abaxial	Adaxial more than 2x size of abaxial	Adaxial more than 2x size of abaxial	Adamial more than 2s size of abaxial	Adamia) more than 25 size of abaxial	Adamial slightly Larger than abarial
Page111an:	Resent	Absent	Wise	Alisant	Brannent . villifor 4	Prosinent. villifore	Present, formed by domed outer surface of cells	Absent	Auent	Absent	Rosent	Moant	Prominent. villaform	Present, formed	Present for and by doned cutor surface of colls	Adreen I
Builtisters calls -	i continuo ve I discontinuo ve	i continuous i discont	R/ sv	l continuous 1 discontinuous	1 continuous 1 discontinuous	3 continuous 1 discontinuous	I continuous	1 continuous 1 discontinuous	I continuors	i continuare i discontinuous	continuous	l cortinuous 1 discontinuous	l continuous	2 continuous	2 continuoris	i continuous
St.mata:	Not sunken, not associated with papillar	Not waken, not associated with papillae	N/av	Not sunten, not associated with papillae	Mot sunken, associated with papillar	Sunken Cremarchid by papillae	Not sunken, not associated with papillae	Not sunker, not associated with papiliae	Not sunken, not associated with papill	Not sunker; not associated with papillae	Not sunken, not associated with papillae	Not sunken, not associated with papillae	Not sunken, not associated with papillae	Not sunken, not assoc:ated with papillae	Not sunken, not associated with papillae	Hot sunken, not associated with papillae
Salaranchuna Indazial <u>40 2</u> *	Beculifore airder	Baculifora gird.v	W27	V-shaped strand	V-shaped strand	V-shaped • crand	V-shaped strand	V-shaped strand	Baculifore girder	Baculifors girder	Baculifors girder	V-shaped strand	Baculifors girder	V-shaped strand	V-shaped strand	Baculife
Manager yil	dinet.	Absent	Nav	Fresenic	Fraint	Present	Fresent	Prevent	//bumt	45mi	1010	Present	Resent	Frasent	Present.	Noseni
Air cavities -	Width 7= height	Nidih Zx height	N/av	Width = height	Width = neight	Width = neight	Hidth 2x height	Width = height	Hidth = height	Wadtr = height	Width = height	Width = height	Width = height	Width = height	aliath = height	Nidth = height
Vancular bundlas ralative Inveition:	Equidistant from adapter and ab- ianial exidencia	Equidistant from adaxial and an- anial epidermis	N/av	Closer to abax- ial epiderait	Equidistant from adaxial and ab- ial epiderais	Closer to shar tal opidernis	Equidistant from adaxial and ab- axial epidermis	Closer to abas	Equidistant from adamiel and ab- axial epiderais	Equidistant free adacial and ab- arial epidernis	Equidistant from adaxial and ab- exial upidernis	Equidistant from adamial and ab- anial muidernis	Equidistant from adaxial and ab axial epiderens	Equidistant from adarial and ab- axial epidermis	Enzidistant from adaxial and ab- axial epidermis	Equidistant from adaptal and ab- axial opidernis
Hotarylen viceonts + relative sizer	Norkally Larger than protoi, les elements	Markedly larger than protoxylm elements	B/av	Markedly larger than protoxylem elements	Markediy larger than protoxyles elements	Markedly larger than protosyles elements	Markedly larger than protoxyles elements	Markedly larger than protoxylem elements	harkedly arger than protoxyl elements	Markedly larger than protoxylee elements	Not earkeds larger than protoxyles closents	Markedly larger than protoxylem elements	Markedly larger that protoxylee elements	Markedly larger than protoxyl elements	Markedly larger than protoxylem elements	Not earkedly larger than protoxyles
Dutgr sheath ai	Connes turnel y Large	Consol CUTUSLY	N /81	Not compicuous ly large	-Not conspicuous ly large	Not conspicuous Ly large	Conspicuously Large	Not conspicuous ly large	Not conspicuous ly large	- Not conspicuous iy large	Not conspicuous ly large	- Not conspicuous ly large	Not conspicuous ly large	Not conspicuous ly large	Not conspicuous ly ⁱ arge	Not compicuous ly large
Permiory calls:	Fairly cueso	Fairly comm	No	Munt	Tairly comm	Fairly comm	Fairly common	Absent	Fairly comon	Fairly common	Very srequent	Aset	Fairly comon	Fairly common	Fairly common	Fairly comm

H/av = ne' available



Table 11. Anatomical characters of the culm that distinguish the southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.

							-	Tara						-		sat.
Fastures	Subgenus Indocer 21		Subgen	Subgeners Vignea				E antiques la svivatica la		Subgenus 6º 4	t. manatrapa	, cognata		C. clavata C	adinibita f	<u>ç. u.</u>
	C. micetari manoplata	C. minmata	<u>C. Entil</u>	C. alcorabilis	drices	C5511								1		
1100 -	Rei angular.	Triangular,	W/1-	Tesangular .	Triangular,	Triangular, angles round	Triangular, angles round	Triangular angles round	Triangular angles round sides straight	Triangular, angles round, sides straight	Triangular, angles round, siéze strenght	Triangular, angles acute, at least one side	Triangular angles round at least and side roncard	Triangular, mulas round sides straight to convex	Triangular, angles acute, at least une side concave	Sirps)
	angles round	angles round sides straight		sides straight to convex	sides straight to convex	sides straight to convex	to convex	to Lonver	to conver	to conver	list sunker	Not sunter	Not sunken	Not sunken	Not sunken	Sale
tan tan	Not water	Nut sunken	Us-	Not stuiten	libt sunian	Not sunker Present	Net surian Present	Present	Provant.	Present	Report.	Freuerl	Present	Watant	frant	Test
Inconstructures	Present	(Traine)	W	Present	Tayout.	54					Only reconits	Alment .	Maria	Rimpe	Always.	22
and the state	Aluirs	-lanys	Ren	41-17 ⁵	(cl ways	Grape	Alsays	Always	ALMAYS	RT HATY S	thin-tianed					
ritera America met el tre salar appli en la veller	E .			X	-	Vertically	Roand to square	Pousé to squar	Round to me	to square	Pound to square	Round to square very large	Round to square very large	Untically elements,	Round to square very large	A Please
ir conition -	laurd to squar matum size	e, Round to square ged.un size	e, New .	to square very large	ary Lares	elcogate, pecium size	very large	very Imge	very sent			Asant	Present	Present	Aresent	1-1
and any calls	+ altrast	Wenent.	w111	About	Present	Frant	et inht] u	(Bant)	Slightly	Slightly	Slightly	Stightly	Slightly	Ing Ladi t	Slightly elorgate	Slig
the world	Rightly	Blightly elenate	Eler	Elightly elongste	Blightly elongate	igngate	alongate	al orgata	elongate at lindifferentiat	elongate ted lindi fferentiat	elongare ted Undifferentiat	ed Differentiated	Differentisted	Differentiated	Differentiates	1 Dif
Frank tisset	Indiffe antis	ted Undifferentia	tes Wav	Differentiated	adifierentiate	Cufined to a	Confined to a	Confined to a	Confined to a	Confined to a	Confined to a	Confined to a few rows in	Confined to a few rows in	Confined to a isu rows in outer scaling-	for rows in outer sealler	-
ainter value at	Litestin of	Stattent -	100	1011	fau rous on outer edge	fee rooms in outer smaller- celled tissue	fau rous on outer esge	few rows on outer edge	outer edge	puter edge	outer eige	cuter smaller (celled tissue	icelied tissue	celles tissue	celled times	

M/av = not availabl







Fig. 4.

O

Plan diagrams of anatomical structure in Carex L. Sclerenchyma shaded black, secretory cells stippled. 1. Leaf lamina (<u>C. burchelliana, Reid '115</u>) X 20. 2. Culm (<u>C. monotropa, Killick 4593</u>) X 20. ac = air cavity; abe = abaxial epidermis; ade = adaxial epidermis; af = angle of flange; bc = bulliform cells; c = sclerenchyma cap; ct = chlorenchyma tissue; cv = commissural vascular bundle; e = epidermis; g = sclerenchyma girder; g% = ground tissue; k = keel; mv = median vascular bundle; sc = secretory cell; vb = vascular bundle.

Plate 11.

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Transverse sections of leaf laminae. Adaxial epidermis uppermost.

- Plate 11.1 & 2: Transverse section keeled, flanged V-shaped; keel prominent, acute, median adaxial groove prominent; lamina thickest at keel and at angle of flange; adaxial epidermal cells more than twice size of abaxial; bulliform cells: 1 continuous layer; stoma arrowed; sclereichyma associated with 2° vascular bundles: baculiform girder; air cavities: width = height; vascular bundles equidistant from adaxial and abaxial epidermides; metaxylem elements markedly larger than protoxylem elements; cells of outer sheath of minor vascular bundles not conspicuously large; secretory cells present, fairly common (<u>C. burchelliana</u>. <u>Reid 1115</u>. J, PRE). Scale bars: 1 = 1166 µm; 2 = 241 µm.
- Plate 11.3 & 4: Transverse section crescentiform, not keeled, median adaxial groove barely discernable; lamina thickest at middle, tapered to margins, grooved where sclerenchyma subjacent to epidermis; adaxial epidermal cells slightly larger than abaxial; stoma arrowed; metaxylem elements not markedly larger than protoxylem elements (<u>C. sp. nov.</u>, <u>Reid 1337</u>, J, PRE). Scale bars: 3 = 4.4 µm; 4 = 241 µm.
- Plate 11.5 & 6: Bulliform cells: 3 continuous layers, 1 discontinuous layer; abaxis1 epidermis papillate, papillae villiform; stomata (one is arrowed in No. 5) overarched by papillae; mesophyll parenchyma present; sclerenchyma associated with 2° vascular bundles: Vshaped strand; vascular bundles closer to abaxial epidermis (<u>C. mossii</u>. <u>Reid 1204</u>. J, PRE). Scale bars: 5 = 254 µm; 6 = 260 µm.
- Plate 11.7: Presence of commissural vascular bundle; surrounding chlorenchyma with small angular airspaces (<u>C. glomerabilis</u>. <u>Reid 1137</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = 325 µm.
- Plate 11.8: Air cavity: width at least twice the height; stoma arrowed (<u>C. zulensis</u>. <u>Reid 1197</u>. J, PRE). Scale bar = 203 µm.



No. of facing pg.: 91

Plate 12.

Southern African species of <u>Carex</u> L.: Transverse sections of culms.

- Plate 12.1: Culm enclosed by leaf sheath; culm profile triangular, angles rounded, sides straight to convex; air cavities round to square, very large; sclerenchyma strands absent from culm angles; sclerenchyma girders associated with major vascular bundles only opposite thin-tissued (adaxial) portion of leaf sheath; major vascular bundles slightly elongated; ground tissue undifferentiated, with minor vascular bundles confined to a few rows on outer edge (<u>C. monotropa</u>. <u>Killick</u> <u>4593</u>, PRE, ROML). Scale bar = 922 µm.
- Plate 12.2 4: Sclerenchyma girders associated with all major vascular bundles; ground tissue undifferentiated, with minor vascular bundles scattered throughout (<u>C. spicato-paniculata</u>. <u>Reid</u> <u>1188</u>, J, PRE). Scale bars: 2 = 1155 µm; 3 = 260 µm; 4 = 260 µm.
- Plate 12.5 & 6: Culm profile circular, ribbed; stomata sunken (one is arrowed); ground tissue differentiated; no minor vascular bundles; secretory cells present (<u>C. sp. nov.</u>, <u>Reid 1327</u>, J, PRE). Scale bars: 5 = 620 µm; 6 = 204 µm.
- Plate 12.7: Major vascular bundle (part of sclerenchyma girder has been cut off) showing small commissural bundle (<u>C. zuluensis</u>. <u>Reid 1192</u>, J, PRE). Scale bar = 135 µm.
- Plate 12.8: Air cavities vertically elongated, of medium size; major vascular bundles markedly elongated (<u>C.</u> mossii. Reid 1204, J, PRE). Scale bar = 355 μ m.

0



CHAPTER 5. TAXONOMIC TREATMENT

A. GENERIC DESCRIPTION

CAREX

Carex L., Species plantarum edn 1: 972 (1753); Thunl : 14 (1794); Schkuh : 1 (1801); Willd.: 207 (1805); Thunb.: 341 (1811); Thunb. 90 (1823); Nees: 534 (1832); Nees: 203 (1836); Steud. 285 (19.0); Kunth: 368 (1837); Boeck.: 14 (1875); Boeck.: 327 (1876); Boeck.: 145 (1877); Pax: 122 (1887); C.B. Cl.: 678 (1894); C.B. Cl.: 299 (1898); Bolus & Wolley-Dod: 356 (1904); Kuekenth.: 67 (1909); Levyns: 130 (1950); Dyer: 890 (1976); Bond & Goldblatt: 38 (1984). Lectotype (<u>fide</u> Stafleu, 1979): <u>C. pulicaris</u> L.

Perennial, caespitose or rhizomatous herbs; diclinous, or occasionally disecious (the European species <u>C</u>, <u>dioica</u> L.). <u>Rhizome: scales</u> triangular, nervose, usually decaying into fibres later. <u>Leaves</u> many, tristichous, basal and cauline ("culm leaves"), sheathing basally, thin tissue on adaxial face of sheath usually splitting later; blades linear, not articulated, outer very short (cataphylls), increasing in length in centripetal direction, erect to recurved, flat, pli-ste or channelled; veins parallel; apex acute to acuminate. <u>Ligule</u> present, convex, partially fused to leaf sheath, free part usually membranous. <u>Culms</u> triangular or terete in cross-section, usually nervose; nodes leaf-bearing ("culm leaves"); internodes either moreor-less equal, or basal interncdes short with nodes concealed by leaf sheaths and upper internode extended. Inflorescence (synflorescence) terminal; occasionally spicate, glomerate-spicate to glomerate-paniculate, paniculate or usually a raceme of spikes; usually 1 primary cait (glomerule, branch, "spike" or coflorescence) or sometimes 2 primary units (in paniculate inflorescences) borne in axils of a spirally arranged series of bracts; bracts leaf-like (in paniculate and racemose-spicate inflorescences), glume-like or setaceous (in spicate, glomerate-spicate and glomerate-paniculate inflorescences); primary units and bracts diminishing in size and complexity of branching towards apex; when bract leaf-like, opposing adaxially inserted bracteole (cladoprophyll) tubular, membranous, concealed by bract sheath; when bract glume-like or setaceous, opposing bracteole also glume-like, exposed; in higher order branches of paniculate inflorescences bractsole usually exposed, nervose, sometimes markedly inflated. overing usually protandrous, in southern African taxa the lower inflorescence mostly pistillate, the upper mostly staminate or bisexual. Spikelets 1-flowered, solitary im axils of spirally arranged, carinate, cymbiform, glumelike bracts. Flowers unisexual, solitary. Perianta wanting. Staminate flower: stamens usually 3, anthers basifixed, apiculate. Pistillate flower enclosed by ovate, usually bicarinate, apically rostrate, modified bracteole

("perigynium" or "utricle"), sometimes together with adaxially inserted, rudimentary rhachilla; style exserted through apical, entire or 2-toothed orifice in rostrum; spikelet axis usually aborted beyond attachment of flower, sometimes evolute, exserted (in 1 European species, <u>C.</u> <u>microglochin</u> Wahlenb., not in southern Africa). <u>Style</u> 2--3 (--4)-stigmatic, stigmas papillate. <u>Ovary</u> 2--3(--4)carpellate, 1-locular. <u>Ovule</u> 1, basal, anatropous. <u>Fruit</u> a beaked. flattened or 3(--4)-angled nutlet; pericarp sclerified, epidermis silicified; still enclosed by perigynium at dispersal; perigynium frequently inflated at dispersal, sometimes with a basal corky layer or sometimes fleshy (<u>C. baccans</u> Nees, not southern African) or bearing elaiosomes. <u>Chromosome number</u> 2n = 16--112.

A large genus of 1 500--2 000 species, distributed mainly in northern hemisphere temperate wetlands, also in woodlands, grasslands, heath, sea shore, alpine and tundra vegetation.

Species of <u>Carex</u> have previously been placed under a wide diversity of generic names, which are now considered to be synonymous with <u>Carex</u>. Two of these names, <u>Vignea</u> P. Beauv. emend Reichenb. and <u>Caricina</u> St.-Lag. have been applied to a southern African taxon, <u>C. divisa</u> Huds., in 1830 and 1887 respectively. Each combination was reduced to synonymy under <u>C. divisa</u> less than ten years after its

publication, by Kunth (1837) and Kuekenthal (1909) respectively. The following generic names have not been applied to the southern African taxa: <u>Agastachys</u> Ehrh., <u>Baecchortus</u> Ehrh., <u>Callistachys</u> Heuff., <u>Caricella</u> Ehrh., <u>Caricinella</u> St.-Lag., <u>Chordorrhiza</u> Ehrh., <u>Cryptoglochin</u> Heuff., <u>P.-tinax</u> Rafin. ex Steud., <u>Bornera</u> Heuff. ex Schur. <u>Drymeia</u> Ehrh., <u>Genersichia</u> Heuff., <u>Heleonastes</u> Ehrh., <u>Leptostachys</u> Ehrh., <u>Leu-oglochin</u> Heuff., <u>Limonae'es</u> Ehrh., <u>Maukschia</u> Heuff., <u>Mondo</u> Adans., <u>Neilreichia</u> Kotule, <u>Phyilostachys</u> Torr., <u>Physiglochis</u> L. K., <u>Polyglochin</u> Ehrh., <u>Schelhal wris</u> Moench., <u>Scuria</u> Rafin., <u>Trasus</u> S.F. Gray, <u>Triodus</u> Rafin., <u>T. plima</u> Rafin., <u>Ulya</u> Hall, <u>Uya</u> Staud., Vign., the Schur.

<u>Carex</u> is a classical name, used in Virgil's <u>Georgics</u> 3: 231, published in 30 B.C. (Xuekenthal, 1909; Robertson, 1979). Here it was used in its singular ablative form, <u>Carice</u>, which is derived from the ancient Greek <u>charaktos</u>. meaning "notched or toothed", <u>karcharos</u>, meaning "jagged" in reference to the sharp teeth along the edges and veins of the leaves, and <u>keirin</u>. meaning "to cut" (Robertson, 1979).

The sixteen southern African spaces may be placed in the following Subgenera and Sections Subg. Inductrex Baill.; Kuekenth : 251 (1909). Sact, Indicas Tuckers.; Kuekenth.: 260 (1909). 1. <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> C.B. Cl.

2. C. zuluensis C.B. Cl.

Subg. <u>Vignea</u> (P. Beauv. emend Reichenb.) Kuekenth.: 111 (1909).

<u>Vignea</u> P. Beauv. emend Reichenb.: 55 (1830). <u>Caricina</u> St.-Lag.: 854 (1889).

Sect. Divisae Christ.; Kuekenth.: 119 (1909).

3. C. divisa Huds.

Sect. Stenorhynchae Holm; Kuekenth.: 165 (1909).

4. C. glomerabilis Krecz.

Subg. <u>Carex</u> (= Eucarex Coss & Germ.): Kuekenth.: 293 (1909).

Sect. Acutae Fries; Kuekenth.: 296 (1909).

5. <u>C. austro-africana</u> (Kukenth.) Raymond

Sect. Maximae Aschers.; Ruekenth.: 423 (1909).

6. <u>C. mossii</u> Nelmes

Sect. <u>Hymenochlaenae</u> Drejer; Kuekenth.: 576 (1909).

7. <u>C. sylvatica</u> Huds.

Sect. Elatae Kuekenth. 645 (1909).

8. C. aethiopica Scatting

Sect. Spirostachyae Drejer; Kuekenth.: 657 (1909).

9. C. burchelliana Boeck.

10. C. ecklonii Nees

11. C. monotropa Nelmes

Sect. <u>Pseudo-cypereae</u> Tuckerm.; Kuekenth.: 693 (1909)

12. C. cognata Kunth

Sect. Paludosas Fries; KuckentL.: 730 (1909).

13. C. acutiformis Ehrh.

16. <u>C. clavata</u> Thunb.

15. <u>C. subinflata</u> Nelmes

Subg. Primocarex Kuekenth.: 68 (1909).

Sect. Petraeae Lang; Kuekenth.: 85 (1909).

97

16. <u>C. sp. nov.</u>

- B. KEYS TO THE SPECIES
- Key utilizing macromorpholucical characters ("DELTA"-derived)

For complete character list, items list and tabular version of this key, see Appendir 2. For interactive version of this key, see diskette in pocket on back endpapers.

1(0). Inflorescence unispicate; stigmas 3 (Subg.

<u>Primocarex</u>)..... C. sp. nov.
Inflorescence glomerate-spicate to glomeratepaniculate; stigmas 2 (Subg. <u>Vignea</u>)..... 2
Inflorescence paniculate; stigmas 3 (Subg.

2(1). Bracts of pistillate spikelets (including awn) longer and wider than perigynia; mature perigynia suberect..... C. divisa Bracts of pistillate spikelets (including awn) shorter and narrower than perigynia: mature perigynia spreading..... C. glemerabilis

3(1). Bracteoles subtending higher order inflorescence branches inflated, mature perigynia not inflated. with 4--6 conspicuous nerves on abaxial surface..... C. spicato-paniculata Bracteoles subtending higher order inflorescence branches not inflated; mature perigynia slightly inflated, with 2 conspicuous curved submarginal nerves on abaxial surface C. zuluensis

(1).	Spikes	erect or suberect 5
	Spikes	spreading 11
	Spikes	perdulous 12

5(4).	Apex of perigynium rostrum demply bidentate;
	teeth 0,51,0 mm long 6
	Apex of perigynium rostrum shallowly bidentate;
	teeth 0,20,5 mm long 8

6(5).	Shoot scales and basal leaves developing extensive
	anthocyanin colouration; leaves dark green
	C. aethiopica

Plants of medium height, 0,1--1,4 m tall; leaves with conspicuous transverse venation, especially in dry material..... C. cognata

9(8). Margins of perigymium rostrum scabrid; bracts of pistillate spikelets glabrous, but ciliate distally on margin..... C. burchelliana Margins of perigynium rostrum glabrous; bracts of pistillate spikelets wholly glabrous C. subinflata

 Mature periodnia glabrous, membranous, few- (2- or 3-) or inconspicuously nerved C. sylvatica Mature perigynia papillate, with hollow papillae, cartilaginous, conspicuously many- (more than 10-) nerved..... C. acutiformis

11(4). Plants of medium height, 0,1--1,4 m tall; basal inflorescence bract sharply reflexed near base of blade at maturity..... C. ecklonii Plants very short, less than 0,06 m tall; basal inflorescence bract not reflexed near base of blade at maturity..... C. monotropa

12(4). Stigmas 3; mature perigynia glabrous..... 13 Stigmas 2; mature perigynia papillate, with solid papillae..... C. austro-africana

13(12). Shoot scales and basal leaves developing extensive anthocyanin colouration; bracts of pistillate spikelets glabrous, but ciliate distally on margin..... C. aethiopica Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes

14(13). Plants very tall, 1,4--1,7 m tall mr moral leaves usually without conspicuous transverse venation..... C. mossii Plants of medium height, 0,1--1,4 m tall; leaves with conspicuous transverse venation, especially in dry material..... C. cognata 2. Key utilizing mainly perigynium characters (handwritten)

Characters utilized 68-69, 71-74, 77-79, 21, 83-90

- 2(1). Surface papillae solid; perigynium narrowly elliptic in cross-section..... C. austro-africana Surface papillae hollow; perigynium triangular in cross-section..... C. acutiformis

 4(3) Perigynium not inflated, with 4--6 conspicuous curved nerves on abaxial surface; margins not winged..... C. spicato-paniculata
 Perigynium slightly inflated, with 2 conspicuous curved submarginal nerves on abaxial surface; margins winged, the wings curving towards the ataxial surface..... C. zuluensis

7(6).

9(8). Rostrum short, c. 0,5--0,6 mm long..... C. mossii

Rostrum very long, c. 2 mm long..... C. sylvatica

11(10). Rostrum short, c. 0,5 mm long; apex shallowly bidentate. teeth c. 0,2 mm long; perigynium triangular with adaxial side flat in crosssection..... C. burchelliana Rostrum 0,7--2,0 mm long; apex shallowly to deeply bidentate, teeth 0,3--1,0 mm; perigynium various shapes in cross-section. if triangular then adaxial side rounded...... 12

13(12). Perigynium evanly inflated; rostrum 1,1--2,0 mm long; apex deeply bidentate, teeth 0,5--1,0 mm long..... C. cognata Perigynium adaxial surface more inflated than abaxial surface, appearing "humpbacked"; rostrum short, 1,0--1,2 mm long; apex shallowly

Ö

bidentate, teeth 0,3--0,6 mm long

..... C. subinflata

14(12).	Rostrum	margin	scabrid C. clavata	3
	Rostrum	margin	glabrous 1	5

15(14). Rostrum abrupt; perigynium 3,0--3,5 mm long C. ecklonii Rostrum tapered; perigynium 5,5--6,5 mm long C. aethiopica

C

C. ENUMERATION OF TAXA

0

1. Carex spicato-paniculata <u>C.B. Cl.</u> in Durand & Schinz (eds), Conspectus Florae Africae 5: 690 (1894); C.B. Cl.: 304 (1898); Kuekenth.: 269, t. 41 (1909); Schoenl.: 69 (1922); Nelmes: 160 (1941b); Haines & Lye: 374 (1983). Type: Natal, Inanda, <u>Medlev Wood 1190</u> (K, lecto., designated by Nelmes: 160 (1941b), --PRE, photo.!; BM!, BOL!, NH!, SAM!). Syntypes: Transvaal, Pietersburg district, Houtbosch, <u>Rehmaun 5627</u> (K!, Z!) [actually <u>C. zuluensis</u> C.B. Cl.]; Natal, <u>Buchanan 350</u> (K!); Natal, <u>Buchanan 355</u> (K!); Orange Free State, <u>Buchanan 98</u> (K, --PR:, pnoto.!); Orange Free State, on the Drakensberg, <u>Fioper 1066</u> (BM!, K!, TCD!, Z!).

Plants 1,0--1,4 m tall, caespitose. <u>Rhizomes</u> very short. 4 mm in diameter. <u>Shoot scales and basal leaves</u> not developing extensive authocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). <u>Leaves</u> not glaucous, dark green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. <u>Basal leaf sheaths</u> folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face splitting simply. <u>Largert leaf blades</u> 600 X 8,5--14,0 mm, flat or plicate in cross-section; adaxial surface scabrid; abaxial surface glabrous; margins proximally glabrous. distally minutely scabrid. <u>Lowest culm leaf</u>: sheath mouth truncate or concave, membranous; ligule 3 mm high, stramineous, or fuscous, membranous, apex acute to obtuse. <u>Culms</u> triangular in cross-section, 2--3 mm in

diameter; internodes all of about equal length, exposed; (1 --)2--3 nodes exposed. Inflorescence paniculate, 270--335 X 35--40 mm. Basal inflorescence bracts leaf-like; sheaths 25 -- 50 mm long; blades 290 mm long. Primary inflorescence units 4--6; all androgynous; usually 1, or sometimes 2 branches from basal nodes, spreading, pyramidal, the largest 40--60 X 25--35 mm. Longest peduncle exserted by 50--60 mm, hairy. Bracts subtending higher order branches with a long setaceous cusr; opposing bracteoles inflated. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 1,5--2,2 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets ovate, 3--4 X 1,5--1,8 mm, shorter that and the same width as the perigynium, stramineous, with or without light to heavy ferruginous striae and hyaline margins, scabrid (mainly on distal half), or (rarely) glabrous, but ciliate distally on margin; carina narrow, 1-nerved; apex acite or obtuse. shortly awned; awn 0,5--0,7 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium suberect, not stipitate, with a conspicuous basal callus, rostrate, 5,0--5,5 X 1,2 mm, triangular in crosssection, not inflated, green or golden brown, base without a layer of corky material, herbaceous, with four to six conspicuous curved nerves on abaxial surrace, scabrid in distal half; rostrum abrupt, 2 mm long, straight, margin not winged, scabrid; rostrum apex deeply bidentate, apical teeth 0,6--1,0 mm long. <u>Rhachilla</u> absent from perigynia. <u>Style</u> base straight; stigmas 3. Mature nutlet elliptic, narrowly clawed, $2, 4--3, 0 \times 1, 0--1, 2 \text{ mm}$, triangular in cross-section,

fuscous with lighter angles, glabrous.

This species flowers and fruits from August to July (i.e. all year round). The plants grow in light shade, on wet or moist forest margins, cn clay or loam substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in summer, in the midlands and in montane areas of northern, eastern and central Transvaal, Swaziland, and Natal. Map 2. It is also recorded from East Africa, in southern Tanzania, Kenya, Zambia and Zimbabwe, where it is common in the Eastern Highlands.

The specific epithet refers to the inflorescence morphology, which is paniculate with the ultimate branches spike-like.

Cufodontis (1971) stated the type to be <u>Rehmann 5027</u>; he was obviously unaware of Nelmes's lectotypification, or that lectotypification was required. Interestingly, <u>Rehmann 5627</u> is not <u>C. spirato-paniculata</u>. but <u>C. zuluensis</u> C.B. Cl. Because it is the only specimen of <u>C. zuluensis</u> to be included amongst the syntypes, it is obvious that Clarke intended the circumscription of <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> to be as described here.

<u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> is easily recognized due to its paniculate inflorescence, in which each ultimate unit (branch) is usually androgynous. It is distinguished from its nearest southern African relative, <u>C. zuluensis</u> C.B.

0

0

Cl., by the inflation of the bracteoles subtending the higher order branches, which causes the inflorescence to assume a pyramidal, rather than a linear shape as in <u>C.</u> <u>zuluensis</u>; this is noticeable even at a very young stage of development. The other differences between the two taxa are not always easily determined, especially in young inflorescences. These include the number of nerves on the abaxial surface of the perigynium and the degree of inflation of the perigynium.

There is a small group of Tropical African species of Subgenus <u>Indocarex</u>. in which the bracteoles subtending the higher order branches are inflated. Although clearly related to these, and perhaps especially to <u>C. chlorosaccus</u> C.B. Cl., <u>C. spicaco-paniculata</u> har inflorescence and spikelet characters differing in most respects, including differently co'oured spikelet bracts and mature perigynia (greenish in <u>C. chlorosaccus</u>, brown in <u>C. spicato-pariculata</u>). Upon drying the rostrum of the perigynium in <u>C. chlorosaccus</u> becomes sharply bent upwards; this is not the case in <u>C.</u> <u>spicato-paniculata</u>.

In its forest margin habitat, <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> is very common and grows in large dense populations. It appears able to colonize artificially created forest margins, such as road cuttings through forests, but only in the absence of aggressive competitors. Examination of plants in the field showed that the fruits were subject to insect attack; this would have the effect of limiting population increase. It is

0

0

thought (see Cha ter 2) that the triangular callus on the proximal end of the perigynium is an elaiosome. This would probably serve as an attractant to ants, which are known to store such elaiosome-bearing fruits underground. Thus the presence of the elaiosome indicates a high degree of adaptation to a habitat where fruit dispersal by water is not guaranteed.

SELECTED CITATIONS

0

0

O

TRANSVAAL.---2229 (Waterpoort): Soutpansberg district, Budworth Farm (-DD), <u>Mogg 28176</u> (J). ---2230 (Messina): Soutpansberg district, Entabeni Forest Reserve (-CC), <u>Getliffe 1018</u> (J, PRE). ---2328 (Baltimore): Bochum district, Blaauwberg (-BB), <u>Codd</u> & <u>Dver 9082</u> (BM, PRE).

---2329 (Pietersburg): Pietersburg district, Houtbosch (-DD), <u>Schlechter 4759</u> (BOL, GRA, Z).

---2330 (Tzaneen): Letaba district, 8 km from Tzaneen, Westfalia Estates (-CA), <u>Arnold 382</u> (PRE); Letaba district, near Izaneen, New Agatha (-CC), <u>Rogers 18837</u> (BM, Z). ---2427 (Thabazimbi): Thabazimbi district, Kransberg, below confluence of Fern Kloof (-BC), <u>Westfall 1019</u> (PRE); Thabazimbi district, Kransberg, Groothoek Farm (-DA), <u>Westfall 758</u> (PRE).

---2429 (Zebediela): Pietersburg district, near Potgietersrus, Makapansgat (-AA), <u>Maguire 2729A</u> (J). ---2430 (Pilgrim's Rest): Pilgrim's Rest district,

Mariepskop, Col. Reitz's grave (•DB), <u>Meeuse 9939</u> (PRE); L)demburg district, Ohrigstad Dam Nature Reserve (-DC), <u>Jacobsen 2361</u> (PRE); Pilgrim's Rest district, 8,8 miles fr.m Pilgrim's Rest, God's Window (-DD), <u>Davidson & Mogg 33329</u> (K, PRE).

---2431 (Acornhoek): Pilgrim's Rest district, about 5 miles west of Acornhoek, near road bridge (-CA), <u>Bruyns-Haylett</u> 143 (NU).

---2526 (Zeerust): Marico district, Enzelsberg (-AC), Louw 1874 (PRE).

---2527 (Rustenburg): Rustenburg Kloof (-CA), <u>Stevn 889</u> (NBG); Rustenburg district, about 14 km south-east of Rustenburg near Crystal Waters (Sparkling Waters Hotel) (-CB), <u>Forbeş 399</u> (J); Rustenburg district, Tierkloof (-CC), <u>Venter 1057</u> (PRE); Brits district, Magaliesberg, Jacksonstuin (-DA), <u>Van Vuuren 424</u> (PRE); Krugersdorp district, Magaliesberg, Nooitgedacht (-EC), <u>Van Rensburg</u> S.n. sub J37011 (J).

---2529 (Witbank): Middelburg district, Loskop Dam, first stream after Scheepersloop (-AD), <u>Du Plessis 1733</u> (PRE); Middelburg district, Loskop Dam Nature Reserve, Donkerhoek (-CB), <u>Reid 1113</u> (J, PRE).

---2530 (Lydenburg): Lydenburg district, Spitskop (-AB), <u>Wilms 1592</u> (BM); Lydenburg district, Coromandel Farm, above nature reserve (-AD), <u>Reid 849</u> (J, PRE); Pilgrim's Rest district, Sabie (-BB), <u>Rogers 18683</u> (Z); Nelspruit district, Houtbosloop on road between Sudwala Caves turnoff and

0

Rosehaugh (-BC), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 14221</u> (NU, PRE); Nelspruit, Lowveld Botanical Garden, Hall & Sons side near fountain (-BD), <u>Buitendaz 531</u> (PRE, STE) Waterval Boven (-CB), <u>M. Moss s.n. 200 C.E. Moss 17498</u> (BM, J). ---2531 (Komatipoort): White River district, 5 km from turnoff to Sabie on White River/Hazyview road, about 25 km from White River, private farm (-AA), <u>Jordaan 220</u> (NH); Barberton district, Agnes Gold Mine (-CC), <u>Balsinhas 3138</u> (MO, PRE).

VENDA.---2230 (Messina): Thohoyandou district, Thathe Vondo Forest Reserve (-CD), <u>Hemm 181</u> (J, PRE); Tshidsini (Tshamutshedsi), western side of mountain (-DB), <u>Van Wyk</u> <u>3664</u> (PRE).

LEBOWA.---2430 (Pilgrim's Rest): Letaba district, The Downs (-AA), <u>Moss & Rogers 253</u> (S); Shilouvane (-AB), <u>Junod</u> <u>2249</u> (PRE, Z).

SWAZILAND.---2531 (Komatipoort): Piggs Peak district, Havelock (-CC), <u>Compton 31309</u> (NBG, PRE). ---2630 (Carolina): Usutu Forest (-BD), <u>Hainet 7025</u> (PRE). ---2631 (Mbabane): Piggs Prak district, Komati Bridge (-AA), <u>Compten 26846</u> (NBG, NU, PRE); Mbabane district, mear Mbabane, caves above Black Mbuluzi Valley (-AC), <u>Gordon-Gray</u> <u>6076</u> (BUDW, NU, FRE).

NATAL.---2729 (Volksrust): Newcastle district, northern Drakensberg, Ncandu State Forest (-DC), <u>Nicholas & Briggs</u> <u>1963</u> (NH, PRE).

---2730 (Vryheid): Utrecht district, Donkerhoek Farm (-AD),

Devenish 1806 (PRE); Vryheid Nature Reserve (-DC), <u>Youthed</u> 141 (PRE).

---2731 (Louwsburg): Ngotshe district, Ngotshe Krans (-CB), <u>Bayer s.n.</u> (NU); Ngotshe district, Ngome State Forest, along road from staff houses to start of Wilderness Trail (-CD), <u>Reid 1188</u> (J, PRE).

---2828 (Bethlehem): Bergville district, Royal Natal National Park, Tiger Falls (-DB), <u>Hillia d & Burtt 15405</u> (NU).

---2829 (Harrismith): Bergville district, Little Switzerland (-CA), <u>Anderson 201</u> (PRE); Bergville district, Cathedral Peak, Umlambonja Forest (-CC), <u>Schelpe 247</u> (NU); Estcourt district, eastern end of Draycott Hill (-DC), <u>Acocks 11508</u> (BM, PRE).

---2831 (Nkandla): 21 km from Nkandla to Eshowe, Nkandla Forest (-CA), <u>Reid 1191</u> (J, PRE).

---2929 (Underberg): Estcourt district, Drakensberg, Cathkin Park, Ndedema Forest (-AB), <u>Galpin 11889</u> (BOL, PRE). ---2930 (Pietermaritzburg): Lions River district, near Howick, Shafton Farm (-AD), <u>Hutton 112</u> (GRA); New Hanover district, Little Noodsberg, Laager Farm (-BD), <u>Hilliard &</u> <u>Burtt 14497</u> (NU, PRE); Pietermaritzburg, Town Bush Valley (-CB), <u>Moll 1788</u> (MO, NU, PRE); Pietermaritzburg district, Table Mountain (-DA), <u>Killick 303</u> (NU); Ndwedwe district, Inanda Game Park (-DB), <u>Ward 8739</u> (NU, PRE). Putative hybrid: <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> C.B. Cl. X <u>C.</u> zuluensis C.B. Cl.

A putative hybrid between this species and C. zuluensis C.B. Cl. has been noted. In appearance it is similar to C. zuluensis. with a linear inflorescence (i.e. the bracteoles subtending the higher order branches are not inflated). The nervation of the perigynia is similar to that of C. zuliensis (i.e. with 2 submarginal nerves on the abaxial surface). The perigynia are however, not inflated (as in C_{\cdot} spicato-paniculata). The stigma number is unstable, being two or three within the same inflorescence. The undivided portion of the style is much longer than in either of the putative parent species, and is exserted from the rostrum, remaining attached to the nutlet after the stigmas have been shed. The nutlet, although basically elliptic in shape as in the putative parents, tends to be somewhat irregular. In addition the nutlet is only very shortly stipitate, as in <u>C.</u> spicato-paniculata (in <u>C. zulvensis</u> it is long-stipitate). The foliage tends to oe yellow-green, as in <u>C. zuluensis</u>, but this is assumed to be habitat-related, as one specimen (Reid 1018) was growing in an oven sunny habitat, between rocks on the steep side of a small waterfall.

The possibility exists that a distignatic species is one of the putative parents: <u>C. austro-africana</u> is recorded from Oshoek Farm and <u>C. glomerabilis</u> is known to occur in the Wakkerstroom district (see specimen ritations for that species). Isozyme studies could be employed to test this

possibility.

This putative hybrid has been recorded from two localities in the 2730AD geographical quarter-degree square, which straddles the Transvaal-Natal border. Included on Map J.

SPECIMEN CITATION

0

TRANSVAAL.---2730 (Vryheid): Wakkerstroom district, Oshoek Farm (-AD), <u>Reid 1018</u> (J, PRE).

NATAL.---2730 (Vryheid): Utrecht district, Retirement Farm (-AD), <u>Devenish 1512</u> (MO, PRE).

- Map 2. (Opposite above): Distribution of <u>Carex spicato-</u> <u>paniculata</u> C.B. Cl. in southern Africa.
- Map 3. (Opposite below): Distribution of <u>Carex zuluensis</u> C.B. Cl. (dots) in southern Africa and of putative hybrid: <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> C.B. Cl. X <u>C.</u> <u>zuluensis</u> C.B. Cl. (square).

2

Ø


Plants 1,0--1,2 m tall, caespitose. <u>Rhizomes</u> very short, 2,5--3,0(--5,0) mm in diameter. <u>Shoot scales and basal</u> <u>leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or</u>

<u>C. merxmuelleri</u> Podlech: 121 (1961), <u>syn. nov.</u> Type: Transvaal, Mariepskop, <u>Merxmuller 553</u> (M, holo.; PRE!). [<u>C. condensata</u> auct. non Nees: C.B. Cl.: 305 (1898).]

(1971), nom. lleg. Syntypes: Nyasaland (Malawi), Mt. Mlanje, Whyte s.n. (not seen); Orange River Colony, Buchanan 150 (not found); Zululand, Komo, Havgarth s.n. sub Medley Wood 7540 (K, --PRE, photo.!); Natal, Buchanan 149 (not found); Natal, Buchanan 353 (NH!) [actually <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> C.B. Cl.]; Natal, Hutton 344 (uot found); Natal, <u>Sim 923</u> (not found); Umtata, <u>Schlechter 6341</u> (GRA!, Z!); Tembuland (Transkei), <u>Baur 444</u> (not found); Tembuland (Transkei), Baziya, <u>Baur 1154</u> (BOL!, K!).

2. Carex zuluensis <u>C.B. Cl.</u> in Kew Bulletin Add. Ser.
8: 74 [1908); 3choenl.: 69, 70, t. 79 (1922); Nelmes: 100
(1954). Type: Terbuland (Transkei), Baziya, <u>Baur 1156</u> (K,
lecto.!, here designated, --PRE, photo.!; BOL!).
Syntypes: Malawi, Mt. Mlanje, <u>Whyte s.n.</u> (not seen); Natal,
<u>Buchanar 149</u> (unt found); Orange River Colony, <u>Buchanan 150</u>
(not found); Natal, <u>Buchanan 353</u> (NH!) [actually <u>C. spicato-</u>
<u>paniculata</u> C.B. Cl.]; Zululand, Kome, <u>Haygarth s.n. sub</u>
<u>Medlev Wood 7540</u> (K, --PRE _moto.!); <u>Baur 444</u> (not found).
<u>C. huttoniana Kuekanth.: 271 (1909); Cufod.: 1493</u>

sometimes small patches). Leaves not glaucous, yellow- or dark green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face simply splitting. Lange burnt leaf blade 500--650 X 7--12 mm, flat in cross-section; adaxial surface scabrid; abaxial surface glabrous; margins proximally glabrous, distally minutaly scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth concave, herbaceous; ligule 4 mm high, fuscous, membranous, apex acute or obtuse. Culms triangular in crosssection, 1,5--2,7 mm in diameter; internodes all of about aqual length, exposed; 2 or 3 nodes exposed. Inflorescence paniculate, 240--505 X 20--50 mm. Basal inflorescence bracts leaf-like; sheaths 20--60 mm long; blades 170--360 mm long. Primary inflorescence units 5--6; linear; all androgynous; usually 1, or sometimes 2 branches from basal nodes, erect, or suberect; the largest 50--95 X 8--20 mm. Longest <u>peduncles</u> exserted by 25--85 mm, hairy. <u>Bracts subtending</u> higher order branches with a long setaceous cusp; opposing bracceoles not inflated. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 2,8--3,5 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets ovate, 3,5--4,5 X 2 mm, shorter and narrower than perigynium, stramineous with light to heavy ferruginous striae and hyaline margins, glabrous, but ciliate distally on margin; carina narrow, single-nerved; apex obtuse, sometimes emarginate, shortly awned; awn (0--)1 mm long, margin scabrid. <u>Mature perigynium</u> suberect, not stipitate, with a conspicuous basal callus, rostrate, 4,5--

0

6.0 X 1.5--2.0 mm, triangular with adaxial side winged in cross-section. slightly inflated, green, bree without a layer of corky material, herbaceous, with 2 conspicuous curved submarginal nerves on abaxial surface, scabrid in distal half; rostrum tapered 1.2--2.0 mm lags, bent sharply upwards, margin not winged, scabrid; rostrum apex shallowly bidentate, apical teeth 0.4--0.7 mm long. <u>Rhachilla</u> absent from perigynia. <u>Style</u> base straight; stigmas 3. <u>Mature</u> <u>nutlet</u> obovate, narrowly clawed, 2.5--3.5 X 1.2--1.8 mm, triangular in cross-section, fuscous with lighter angles, minutely papillose.

This species flowers and fruits from September to May. The plants grow in full sun, or light shade, on wet or moist forest margins, on clay or leam substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in summer or at all seasons, from near the coast to montane areas, in northern and eastern Transvaal, Swaziland, Natal, eastern Cape Province, and Transkei. Map 3. It is also recorded from East Africa, in Malawi and Zimbabwe, where it is fairly common in the Eastern Highlands.

The specific epithet refers to the distribution of this species (in KwaZulu, then known as Zululand), but is not particularly appropriate as the species is fairly widely distributed in the summer rainfall regions of southern and eastern Africa.

0

<u>C. zuluensis</u> is not obviously closely related to any other Tropical African species of subge is <u>Indocarex</u>, apart from <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u> C.B. Cl.; however the latter is readily distinguishable even at a very early state of development of the inflorescence, due to the bracteoles which subtend the higher order branches being inflated, causing the inflorescence to assume a pyramidal, mot linear shape.

C. merxmuelleri Podlech appears to be a more slender form of <u>C. zuluensis</u>. Material (<u>Reid 1173</u>) collected near Tzaneen, northern Transvaal, in a habitat with low light intensity, was initially identified as C. merxmuelleri (by comparison with the isctype in PRE) due to its slender vegetative habit, dark green leaves, and slender, less branched inflorescance form. While cultivated at Pretoria National Botanic Gardens the plants were exposed to brighter light, and became indistinguishable from C. zuluensis 8. str.. being vegetatively far more robust with yellow-grown leaves, and with a more robust, more complexly branched inflorescence. It appears that the differences between L mersmuelleri and C. zuluensis are merely habitat-relat d and Int genetically based, as shown by field and cultivation studies. Thus it is appropriate that C. merxmuelleri be regarded as a synonym of <u>C. zuluensis</u>.

Clarke's <u>C. zuluensis</u> was published posthumously (1908) and shortly thereafter Kuekenthal's <u>C. huttoniana</u> was published (1909). The syntypes cited for <u>C. huttoniana</u>

include all of the syntypes of <u>C. zuluensis</u>. so there is no doubt that <u>C. huttoniana</u> is illegitimate (Greuter et al., 1988, International Code of Botanical Nomenclature, Art. 63.1). When Podlech described <u>C. merxmuelleri</u> (1961) he noted its similarity to <u>C. huttoniana</u>; he was clearly unaware that the latter is illegitimate. Likewise Cufodontis (1971) was apparently unaware of this fact, am he lectotypified <u>C. hutton na</u>, designt ing <u>Hutton 344</u> as the loctotype.

Like <u>C. spicato-paniculata</u>. <u>C. zviuensis</u> bears a basal callus on the perleynium; as the two species grow in similar habitats, where water is not freely available for dispersal of fruits, this feature is thought to be an adaptation for dispersal of the fruits by ants.

A putative Mybrid between this species and <u>C. spicato-</u> paniculata C.B. Cl. is discussed above.

Members of the Subgenus are numerous in the forested parts of Malaysia, and it is possible that the Subgenus originated there (Smith and Faulkner, 1976, and references therein).

PEECTED CITATIONS

TRANSVAAL.---2230 (Messina): Soutpansberg district, Entabeni (-CC), <u>Obermever 914</u> (PRE).

---2329 (Pietersburg): Pietersburg district, Woodbush, Mountain Home Farm (-DD), <u>Hore s.n. sub PRE 39284</u> (PRE). ---2330 (Tzaneen): Letaba district, Duiwelskloof, Westfalia Estate, Grootbosch Mt. (-CA), <u>Bos 1171</u> (PRE). ---2430 (Pilgrim's Rest): Pilgrim's Rest district, Drakensberg, Mariepskop (-DB), <u>Merxmuller 553</u> (PRE); Pilgrim's Rest district, Mount Sheba Nature Reserve (-DC), <u>Kerfoot. Goover & Eastman 247</u> (J); Pilgrim's Rest district, Pairyland just outside Graskop (-DD), <u>Kluge 1520</u> (PRE). ---2531 (Komatipoort): Barberton (-CC), <u>Pott 5571</u> (PRE).

VENDA.-- 2230 (Messina): Thohoyandou district, Thathe Vondo Forest Resrve, on road between Tshidzivhe and Tshilungwi (-CD), <u>Hemm 416</u> (J, PRE).

LEBGWA.---2430 (Pilgrim's Rest): Letaba district, The Downs (-AA), <u>Jupod 4107</u> (PRE).

SWAZILAND.---2631 (Mbabane): Mbabane district, Hawane Falls (-AA), <u>Compton 27400</u> (NBG, PRE); Mbabane district, Gobolo (-AC), <u>Compton 30357</u> (NBG, PRE).

NATAL.---2729 (Volksrust): Newdastle district, Buffelshoek (-DD), <u>Smit 1157</u> (PRE, PRU). ---2731 (Louwsburg): Ngotshe district, Ngome State Forest, start of wilderness (Puil (-CD), <u>Reid 1189</u> (J, PRE). ---2828 (Bethlehem): Bergville district, Royal Natal National Park, Tiger Falis (-DB), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 15408</u> (NU).

----2829 (Harrismith): Khip River district, Van Reenen (-AD), Bews 472 (NU); Bergville district, Cathedral Peak, close to hozel on path to Umlambonja (-CC), <u>Goetghebeur 4534</u> (PRE); Encourt district, Draycott Hill (-DC), <u>Acocks 11443</u> (BM, PRE). ---2831 (Nkandla): Mtonjaneni district, Imfulazane Farm (-CB), <u>Mogg 6219</u> (CRA, PRE).

----2929 (Underberg): Estcourt district, Drakensberg, Cathkin Nark, on the way to the Grotto (-AB), <u>Howlett & Howlett 14</u> (NFN); Estcourt district, Thabamhlope, 0,5 km from police post on road to Draycott (-BA), <u>Reid 1192</u> (J, PRE); Lions River district, Umgeni Poort Farm (-BD), <u>Moll 1397</u> (PRE); Enderberg district, Cobham Forest Station, valley of "Troutbeck" draining from Ndlovini Mt. (-CB), <u>Hilliard &</u> Burtt 9721 (NU).

---3029 (Kokstad): Alfred district, Weza Forest Reserve (-DA), <u>Schrire 771</u> (NH).

----3030 (Port Shepstone): Ixopo district, 1 km east of Ixopo (-AA), <u>Strev 6122</u> (PRE); Umzinto district, Mgayi (-BC), <u>Ward</u> <u>5044</u> (BUDW, NH, PRE); Port Shepstone district, The Valleys Farm (-CB), <u>Mogg 13950</u> (PRE); Port Shepstone district, Etheldale Farm, adjacent to Mtamvuna Nature Reserve (-CC), <u>Ward 7198</u> (BUDW, NH, PRE); Umzinto district, Allerton (-DA), Mogg 6619 (GRA).

---3130 (Port Edward): Port Edward (-AA), Taylor 5410 (NBG),

CAPE.---3226 (Fort Beaufort): Cathcar' district, Hogsback, Auckland Forest Reserve, picnic site (-DB), <u>Reid</u> 1203 (J, PRE).

---3227 (Stutterheim): Stutterheim district, Dohne Mt., near summit (-CB), <u>Galpin 2454</u> (K, PRE).

---332E (Grahamstown): Albany district, Coldspring near Grahamstown (-AD), <u>Hilner 196</u> (GRA); Grahamstown (-BC), <u>Gane</u> <u>5.n. sub TRV 17151</u> (PRE).

TRANSKEI.---3127 (Lady Frere): Engcobo district, Satanna's Nek (-DB), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 14546</u> (NU). ---3128 (Umtata): Mountain between Qumbu and Shawbury Mission (-BB), <u>Schoenland 4123A</u> (GRA); Baziya Mt. (-CB), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 13878</u> (NU, PRE); Umtata (-DB), <u>Schlechter</u> 6341 (GRA, Z).

---3228 (Butterworth): Centani district, Manubi Forest (-BC), <u>Compton 17726</u> (NBG).

CISKEI.---3227 (Stutterheim): Keiskammahoek district, ridge above Evelyn Valley (-CA), <u>Acocks 15730</u> (PRE); King William's Town district, Maden Dam (-CB), <u>Acocks 9291</u> (BM, PRE).

<u>C. consanguinea</u> Kunth: 374 (1837); Steud.: 288 (1840). Type: Cape, Namaqualaud, between Pedroskloof and Leliefontein, <u>Drège 2450</u> (B, holo.; P, lecto.!, here designated; BM!, K!, S!, SAM!, TCD!).

Plants 100--415 mm tall. Rhizomes long, 1,5--5,0 mm in diameter. Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). Leaves not glaucous, yellow-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths tubular, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face simply splitting. Largest basal leaf blade (140)--150 X 2,0--2,5 mm, channelled in cross-section; adaxial surface papillate; abaxial surface glabrous; margins proximally glabrous, distally minutely scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth truncate, membranous: ligule 1,5 mm high, fuscous, membranous, apex obtuse. Culms triangular in cross-section, 1 mm in diameter; uppermost internode very long, the lower all more-or-less basal, very short, concealed by leaf sheaths. Inflorescence glomerate-spicate to glomeratemiculate, 12--17 X ?--8 mm. Basal inflorescence bract

bristle-like, not sheathing; blade 10--17 mm long; opposing bracteole exposed, not sheathing. Primary inflorescence units 5--7; all androgynous; the largest 5 X 2 mm. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 2,8--3,2 mm long. Dracts of pistillate spikelets ovate, 4,5 --5,0 X 2,5 mm, longer and wider than perigynium, goldenbrown, with wide hyaline margins, glabrous; carina broad, 3nerved; apex acute, awned to muticous; awn 0--0,3 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium suberect, not stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 4,2 X 1,8 mm, elliptic in cross-section, not inflated, golden brown, without a layer of corky material, cartilaginous, glabrous, nerves cposicuous, many (more than 10); rostrum tapered, 1,5 mm long, straight, margin not winged, scabrid; apex shallowly bidentate, apical seath 0,8 mm long. Rhachilla absent from perigynia. Style base straight; stigmas 2. Mature nutlet ovate, broadly clawed, 2 X 1,6 mm, narrowly elliptic in cross-section, yellowish-brown, glabrous.

In southern Africa this species flowers and fruits from September to June. The plants grow in full sun, in perennially waterlogged marshland, on sandy substratum. The species occurs ir areas receiving rainfall in summer and winter, from near the coast to the interior, in Orange Free State and north-west and central Cape Province. Map 4. It is fairly common and widespread in Europe and Asia, and in North Africa (Morocco, Algeria, Egypt and Libya); also

recorded from New Zealand.

In Europe the common name for this species is "Divided Sedge"; both this name and the specific epithet are descriptive of the inflorescence morphology, in which the main branches of the inflorescence are frequently remare from each other.

As noted in the nomenclature section above, the type of <u>C. divisa</u> has probably been lost. According to Stafleu and Cowan (p. **3FU**, 1979) Hudson's house and much of his herbarium was destroyed by fire in 1783. The name therefore requires neotypification, but it is felt that the problem is one for European systematists to solve.

When Kunth (1837) described <u>C. consanguinea</u>, based on specimens collected by Drege in Namaqualand, he noted its similarity to <u>C. divisa</u>. In 1875 Boeckeler placed <u>C.</u> <u>consanguinea</u> in formal synonymy under <u>C. divisa</u>; Boeckeler's decision has been upheld by all authors since then and is confirmed by the present study. It is probable that the holotype was housed in B and has been destroyed (Stafleu & Cowan p. 693, 1979), thus the specimen in P should be designated as the lectot.pe.

<u>C. divisa</u> is easily distinguished from other southern African species of Subgenus <u>Vignea</u>. by the broadly ovate, membranous bracts of the pistillate spikelets, which are much larger than the perigynia they subtend. The perigynia, which remain erect, not spreading at maturity as in <u>C.</u>

<u>Elomerabilis</u> Krecz., and which do not have a corky layer at the base as in that species, are also distinctive. <u>C. divisa</u> is distinguished from other members of Section <u>Divisae</u> by the following combination of characters: very thick, horizontal rhizomes, narrow (2 mm wide) leaves, the large bracts subtending the pistillate spikelets, perigynium conspicuously nervose on both upper and lower surfaces, and short rostrum.

In southern Africa <u>C. djvisa</u> is apparently a very occasional adventive, dispersed by birds migrating between Europe and southern Africa; very few herbarium records exist, possibly due to very specific habitat requirements of the species. Previous collection sites (such as Sandwerf Farm, Calvinia district) were revisited during the course of the present study; in the intervening period the existing sandflats had been irreversibly altered by the planting of <u>Arundo</u> species, with the result that no <u>Carex</u> plants were in evidence.

SELECTED CITATIONS

O.Γ.S.---2725 (Bloemhof): Hoopstad district, Swartsrus Farm (-DA), <u>Zietsman 199</u> (PRE).

CAPE.---2917 (Springbok): Namaqualand, 8,5 miles south of Springbok (-DB), <u>Acocks 19564</u> (PRE).

---3018 (Kamiesberg): Namaqualand, Draaiklip (-AA), <u>Pearson</u> 6789 (BOL, K).

---3120 (Williston): Calvinia district, Sandwerf Farm (-AC),

Acocks 18588 (PRE).

---3220 (Sutherland): Eutherland district, Uitkyk Farm (-AD), <u>Marloth 9696</u> (PRE).

---3318 (Cape Town): Hopefiel district, on the way to Coenradenburg Farm (-AB), <u>Bachmann 2159</u> (Z). Map . (Opposite above): Distribution of <u>Carex divisa</u> Huds. in southern Africa.

Map 5. (Opposite below): Distribution of <u>Carex glomerabilis</u> Krecz. in southern Africa.



.

1

130

8

.

4. Carex glomerabilis <u>Krecz.</u> in <u>Butaniceskij zurnal</u> <u>Soyuz Sovietskikh Sotsialistkikh Republikikh</u> 7: 34 (1937). Type: Cape, without precise locality, <u>Thunberg s.n.</u> (UPS, holo., --PRE, microfiche No. 21837!). 131

<u>C. glomerata</u> Thunb.: 14 (1794); Willd.: 232 (1805); Thunb.: 344 (1811); Schkuhr: 13 (1806); Thunb.: 9J (1823); Nees: 534 (1832); Nees, 203 (1836); Kunth: 384 (1837); Steud.: 290 (1840); Boott: 81, t. 222 (1860); Boeck.: 59 (excl. spec. americ.) (1875); C.B. Cl.: 685 (excl. syn. <u>C.</u> <u>brongniartii</u> Kunth) (1894); C.B. Cl.: 301 (1898); Bolus & Wolley-Dod: 356 (1904); Kuekenth.: 168 (1909); Levyns: 131 (1950), <u>nom. illeg.</u> non Gilib. (1792). Type: As fcr <u>C.</u> glomerabilis.

<u>C. vulpina</u> L. var. <u>glomerata</u> (Thunb.) Wahlenb.: 144 (1803); Schoenl.: 69 (1922). Type: As for <u>C. glomerabilis</u>.

<u>C. schlechteri</u> Nelmes (<u>nom. nov.</u> for <u>C. vulpina</u> sensu C.B. Cl.): 269 (1941c), <u>svn. nov.</u> Type: Transkei, near Bashee, <u>Schlechter 6286</u> (K, holo., --PRE, photo.!; DM!, GRA!, NBG!, PRE!).

<u>C. levibensis</u> Nelmes: 269 (1941c), <u>syn. nov.</u> Type: Lesotho, Leribe Plateau, <u>Dieterlen 758</u> (K, holo.!; NH!, PRE!, SAM!).

[<u>C. vulpina</u> auctt. non L.: C.B. Cl.: 301 (1898); Kuekenth.: 168 (1909); Schoenl.: 69, t. 78 (1922); Bond & Goldblatt: 38 (1984).]

Plants (100)--675 mm tall. Rhizomes long, 1,5--3,5 mm in diameter. Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). Leaves not glaucous, yellow-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths tubular, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face simply splitting. Largest basal leaf blade 130--300 X 2,5--5(--9) mm, flat or channelled in cross-section; adaxial surface papillate; abaxial surface glabrous; margins proximally papillate, distally scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth truncate, membranous; ligule 1,5--2,0 mm high, whitish, or stramineous, membranous, apex obtuse. Culms triangular in cross-section, 1--3 mm in diameter; uppermost interrode very long, the lower all more-or-less basal, very short, concealed by leaf sheaths. Inflorescence glomerate-spicate to glomerate-paniculate, 15--60 X 8--15 mm. Basal inflorescence bract bristle-like, not sheathing; blade 10--45(--140) mm long; opposing bracteole exposed, not sheathing. Primary inflorescence units 7--10, the largest 5 -- 15 X 5-- 10 mm. Brack of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 1,7--2,6 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets ovate, 3,0--5,5 X 1,3--2,0 mm, shorter and narrower than perigynium, golden-brown, or ferruginous, scabrid (mainly on distal half), or glabrous, but ciliate distally on margin; carina narrow, 1-nerved; apex acute or rarely obtuse, awned, or muticous; awn 0--2 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium spreading, sometimes stipitate,

without a basal callus, roscrate, (3,0--)3,5--5,5 X (1,1--)1,8--2,2 mm, ellipti :h flat base in crosssection, not inflated, stramtueous, or ferruginous, base with a layer of corky materly. cartilaginous, conspicuously many- (more than 10-) nerved, glabrous; rostrum tapered, 0,8--2,0 mm long, straight; rostrum margin winged, scabrid; apex shallowly bidentate; afical teeth 0,3--0,7 mm long. <u>Rhachilla</u> sometimes present ,... perigynia of basal spikelets. <u>Style</u> base straight; stigmas 2. <u>Mature nutlet</u> square, broadly clawed, 1,7--2,2 X 1,0--1,7 mm, narrowly elliptic in cross-section, yellowish-brown, glabrous.

This species flowers and fruits from September to May. The plants grow in full sun, or light shade, in perennially waterlogged marshland, on clay or loam substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in summer, winter, or in all seasons, from near the coast to the alpine plateau, in southern Transwaal, Natal, Lesotho, central, south-western, southern and eastern Cape Province, and Transkei. Apparently endemic to southern Africa. Map 5.

The common name for this species is "Foxtail Sedge" in reference to the distinctive inflorescence morphology. The specific epithet refers to the closely macked inflorescence branches which are thus difficult to distinguish.

<u>C. glomerabilis</u> as recognized here has quite a complicated synonymy. Kuekenthal (1909), without attempting

to rectify the problem, noted that Thunberg's C. glomerata (1794) was pre-empted by <u>C. glomerata</u> Gilibert (1792). Kreczetowicz published C. glomerabilis in 1937 as an avowed substitute for C. glomerata Thun Clarke (1893) and Kuekenthal (1909) recognized two different closely related species, the small, indigenous C, glomerat, and the larger, European C. vulping L. Schoenland (1922) interpreted the two taxa differently, citing most of the large specimens under C. vulpina var. <u>iomerata</u>. The present delimitation of <u>C.</u> glomerabilis includes <u>C. schlechteri</u> Nelmes (<u>nom. nov.</u> for C. vulpina sensu C.B. Cl.) and <u>C. leribensis</u> Nelmes. Nelmes separated these two taxa from <u>C. glomerabilis</u> on size differences of vegetative organs, <u>C. schlechteri</u> being more robust, with broader leaves, and <u>C. leribensis</u> being more slender, with narrower leaves than <u>C. glomerabilis</u>. Additionally, during the present study specimens which could be placed in C. schlechteri on account of their broad leaves, appeared to have larger, more complexly branched inflorescences (termed here "glomerate-paniculate"). Examination of plants in the field and of a wice range of herbarium material of <u>C. glomerabilis</u> <u>s. lat.</u> showed that these characters could not be used to distinguish these three taxa; even the complexity of branching of the inflorescence appeared to be influenced by the availability of nutrients in the substratum, and in many specimens of C. glomerabilis s. str. the lower branches were rebranched, thus approaching the morphology of <u>C. schlechteri</u>. Gther

distinctions which had been utilized by Clarke and Nelmes (differing colour and nervation of prigynia, presence of wings on rostrum), were found upon examination of the type material, to have been incorrectly observed, and the types of <u>C. schlechteri</u> and <u>C. leribensis</u> could be placed within the range of variation of <u>C. glomerabilis</u>. In contrast to <u>C.</u> <u>slowerabilis s. str.</u>, <u>C. leribensis</u> does appear to have consistently smaller perigynia and slightly ovate, rather than square fruits. More fieldwork is required to determine whether these characters are sufficient to uphold <u>C.</u> <u>leribensis</u> as a separate species; in the list of selected citations, specimens which would fall into this twom are marked with an asterisk (*).

The group of species of Subgenus <u>Vignea</u> to which <u>C.</u> <u>glomerabilis</u> belongs are rather difficult to distinguish; certainly the Tropical African species require revision. Of the species which occur in Tropical Africa, <u>C. conferta</u> A. Rich. and <u>C. leotosaccus</u> C.B. Cl. are possibly most closely related to <u>C. glomerabilis</u>. however the descriptions of these two species provided in Haines & Lye: 372 (1983) definitely do not describe <u>C. glomerabilis</u>.

SELECTED CITATIONS

TRANSVAAL.---2528 (Pretoria): Pretoria district, Aapies River (-CA), <u>Leendertz s.n. sub TRV 6038</u> (PRE); Wonderboom district, Marks Farm 13 miles east of Pretoria (-CB), <u>Lubke</u> 174 (PRE, S).

---2626 (Klerksdorp): Coligny district, Hakboslaagte (-AN), Kinges 1635 (PRE)

----2627 (Potchefstroom): Rustenburg district, Cyferbult Farm (-AB), <u>Suttan 724</u> (PRE); Potchefstroom district, Die Oog van Gerramdminnebron Farm (-AC), <u>Reid 1154</u> (J, PRE); Carletonville, A. Bailey Nature Reserve (-AD), <u>Van Wyk 458</u> (PRE); Florida, edge of Florida Lake (-BB), <u>Moss 13949</u> (BM, J); Potchefstroom, western approach from Viljoenskroon (-CA), <u>Reid 1153</u> (J, PRE); Vereeniging district, Leeuwkuil Research Station (-DB), <u>Acocks 16130</u> (PRE). ----2628 (Johannesburg): Modderfontein (-AA), <u>Heather S.N.</u> <u>sub PRE 57253</u> (PRE); Brakpan, Geduld Dam (-AB). <u>Murray S.N.</u> <u>sub PRE 39127</u> (PRE); Alberton district, south of Alberton on road to Heidelberg (-AC), <u>forbes 412</u> (J); Vereeniging district, Henley on Kiip (-CA), <u>Moss 17294</u> (J, K). ----2529 (Bethal): Amersfoort district, Brakfontein Farm (-DD), <u>Turner 439</u> (PRE).

---2730 (Vryheid): Amersfoort district, 16 km south-east of Amersfoort on road to Wakkerstroom (-AA), <u>Reid</u> 4 (J, PRE); Wakkerstroom, Martin's Dam (-AC), <u>Hilliard & Burtt</u> 18518 (PRE).

O.F.S.---2725 (Bloemhof): Hoopstad district, Sandveld Nature Reserve (-IB), <u>Vilioe1 21</u> (PRE).

---2727 (Kroonstad): Lindley district, 12,9 km north-east of Steynsris on Vyfspruit road at Heuningspruit crossing (-DC), Smook 6654 (PRE).

---- 2826 (Brandfort): Theunissen district, 4 km west of

Theunissen, Abrahamshof Farm (-BC), <u>Smook 6511</u> (PRE); Brandfort district, 5 km south of Verkeerde Vlei (-DC), <u>Du</u> Preez 1712 (PRE).

---2827 (Senekal); Jinburg district, Willem Pretorius Game Reserve (-AC), <u>Muller 1962</u> (PRE).

---2828 (Bethlehem): Bethlehem district, Arran Farm (-AR), Werzer E&W114 (PRE).

---2925 (Jagersfontein): Fauresmith district, Wolwas Drift (-CB), Smith 5171 (PRE).

---2926 (Bloemfontein): Bloemfontein, Wintervalley (-AA), Mul) r 163 (PRE); Bloemfontein, Dewetsdorp road (-AB), <u>Potts</u> s.n. sub BLFU 1094 (BOL, NU).

---3026 (Aliwal North): Zastron district, 14 km north-west of Zastron (-BB), <u>Smook 5908</u> (PRE); Bethulie district, Tussen-die-Rivieren Game Farm (-CA), <u>Vorster 170</u> (PRE).

NATAL.---2929 (Underberg): Estcourt, Bushmans River (-BB), <u>Acocks 9915</u> (NH, PRE); Underberg distrint, Sani Pass (-CB), <u>Hilliard, Burtt & Manning 17240</u> (NU, PRE, S). ---3029 (Kokstad): East Griqualand, near Cedarville, Greenfield Farm (-AC), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 19026</u> (NU, PRE, S); East Griqualand, near Kokstad, Thornham Farm (-CB), <u>Coleman</u> 707 (PRE).

LESOTHO.---2828 (Bethlohem): Leribe (-CC), <u>Dieterlen</u> 890* (NBG, PRE); Oxbow Agricultural Camp (-DC), <u>Williamson</u> 407 (K); Butha Euthe district, Namahali A Camp (-DD), <u>Lubke</u> 294 (NH, PRE).

---2927 (Maseru): Mountain Road, Bushman's Pass (-BD),

Schmitz 8466 (PRE).

---2928 (Marakabei): Mamalapi (-AC), <u>Compton 21262</u> (NBG); Above St. Martin's Mission, west of Matsoku River (-BD), <u>Coetzee 546</u> (PRE); Semonkong (-CC), <u>Jacot Guillarmod 1733</u> (PRE).

---2929 (Underberg): Sani River Valley (-CA), <u>Killick 4448</u> (PRE); Sani River Valley towards Hodgson's Peaks (-CB), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 9674</u> (NU, PRE); Sehlabathebe National Park, Oribi Hill (-CC), <u>Hoener 1910</u>* (PRE); Sehlabathebe National Park, near cutline on pass (-CC), <u>Schmitz 7004</u> (PRE).

CAPE.---2824 (Kimberley): Warrenton (-BB), <u>Wilman s.n.</u> <u>sub KMG 2983</u> (BOL).

---3026 (Aliwal North): Aliwal North district, Flandshoek Farm (-DC), <u>F. Bolus 163</u> (BCL, PRE).

---3027 (Lady Grey): Barkly East district, Ben MacDhui (-DB), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 16364</u> (NU); Barkly East district, Three Drifts Stream below Pitlochrie (-DC), <u>Hilliard & Burtt</u> <u>14735</u>* (NU, FRE); Barkly East district, along road south of Lundean's Nek, 1 km south of Fetcani Glen Farm track (-DD), <u>Phillipson 623</u> (MO, PRE).

---3028 (Matatiele): Barkly East district, near Naude's Nek, 2 km east of Cairntoul (-CA), <u>Phillipson 690</u> (PRE). ---3123 (Victoria West): Richmond district, vicinity of Styl Kloof (-BD), <u>Drege s.n.</u> (K).

---3124 (Hanover): Middelburg district, Compassberg Farm (-DA), <u>Acocks 18659</u> (PRE).

---3126 (Queenstown): Molteno (-AD), Theron 929 (B, BM,

PRE).

---3225 (Somerset East): Somerset East district, Bonchberg, Glen Avon Farm (-DA), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 13211</u>* (NU, PRr ; Somerset East district, Glen Avon Farm (-DA), <u>Reid 1202</u> (J, FRE).

---3322 (Oudtshoorn): Oudtshoorn district, Cango Valley, Boomplaas Farm (-AC), <u>Moffett 439</u> (PRE, STE); George district, Wilderness (-DC), <u>Compton 14292</u> (NBG); George district, eastern arm of Swartvlei (-DD), <u>REID 1148</u> (J, PRE).

---3325 (Port Elizabeth): Swartkopsrivier (-CD), <u>Ecklon &</u> Zeyher 118 (BOL, PRE).

---3326 (Grahamstown): Albany district, Alicedale, New Year's River Dam (-AC), <u>Jacot Guillarmod 7461</u> (GRA, VRE); Albany district, Curries Kloof near Grahamstown (-BC), <u>MacOwan 115</u> (BOL, TCD); Bathurst district, Kowie River, about 7 miles up (-DB), <u>Britten 2659</u> (GRA, PRE). ----3420 (Bredasdorp): Swellendam (-AB), <u>Mund s.n.</u> (S). ----3421 (Riversdale): Riversdale district, Glen Leith (-AA), <u>Muir 3029</u> (GRA, PRE); PIversdale district, Kruispad road on western side of Kafferkuils River (-AB), <u>Reid 1137</u> (J, PRE): Riversdale district, Great Vals River (-BA), <u>Burchell 6554</u> (K).

----3422 (Mossel Exy): George district, Skaapkop River mouth (-AB), O'Callaghan, Yaa Wyk & Fellingham #37 (PRE, STE). ----3423 (Knysna): Knysna district, Brenton (-AA), <u>Duthie 709</u> (GRA, STE).

TRANSKEI.---3027 (Lady Grey): Herschel district, Sterkspruit Farm (-CB), <u>Hepburn 293</u> (GRA).

---3127 (Lady Frere): Engcobo (-DB), <u>Flanagan 2795</u> (PRE). ---3227 (Stutterheim): Savages house near Ngamakwe (-BB), <u>H.</u> <u>Bolus 10361</u> (BOL).

---3228 (Butterworth): Xhora district, The Haven (-BB), <u>Gordon-Gray 1052</u> (MU); Centani district, Mazeppa Bay, Qora River mouth (-BC), <u>Hilner 451</u> (GRA, PRE).

CISKEI.---3226 (Fort Beaufort): Hewu district, Shiloh (-BB), <u>Baur 1136</u> (KJ; Katberg (-DA), <u>Drège s.n. (C.</u> <u>elomerata "d")</u> (S); Victoria East district, Tyrme river near road bridge to King William's Town (-HD), <u>Phillipson 227</u> (MO, PRE).

---3327 (Peddie): Peddie district, 2,2 km from Hamburg (-AD), Arnold 576 (PRE). 5. Carex austro-africana <u>(Kuekenth.) Raymond</u> in Le Naturaliste Canadien 91: 126 1964). Type: Mooi River, <u>MacOwan 1690</u> [actually <u>Kedley Wood s.n. sub HNAA 1690</u>] (BM, lecto.!, designated here).

Syntypes: Biggarsberg, <u>Wilms 1852</u> (not found); Pretoria, <u>Rehmann 4039</u> (BM!); Orange River Colony, <u>Cooper 909</u> (K, --PRE, photo.!; BOL!); Weenen County, <u>Medley Wood 4981</u> (BM!, PRE!); Without locality, <u>Hutton 144</u> (BM!, PRE!); Without locality, <u>Hutton 354</u> [actually <u>357</u>] (GRA!).

<u>C. cernua</u> Boott var. <u>austro-africana</u> Kuekenth.: 354 (1909); Schoenl.: 69, 70, t. 80 (1922). Type: as fur <u>C.</u> austro-africana.

[C. phacota auct. non Spreng.: C.B. Cl.: 689 (1894); C.B. Cl.: 302 11898).]

Piants 250--605 mm tall, usually but not always caespitose. <u>Rhizomes</u> usually very short, sometimes long, 3 mm in diameter. <u>Shoot scales and basal leaves</u> not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). <u>Leaves</u> glaucous, yellow- or mid-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. <u>Basal leaf sheaths</u> folded, old sheaths not becuming spongy; inner face tearing into membranous strips. <u>Largest basal leaf blade</u> 300--480 X 3--7 mm, flat or plicate in cross-section; adaxial surface glabrous; abaxial surface glabrous: margins proximally glabrous, distally minutely scabrid. <u>Lowest cula leaf</u>: sheath mouth concave, membranous; ligule 7--11 mm high.

fuscous, membranous, apex acute. Culms sharply triangular in cross-section, 2 mm in diameter; uppermost internode very long, the lower all more-or-less basal, very short, concealed by leaf sheaths. Inflorescence a raceme of spikes, 50--310 mm long, Basal inflorescent brace leaf-like, not reflexed near base of blade at maturity; sheath 3 mm long; blade 150--380 mm long; opposing bracteole Lubular, membranous, usually concealed by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence units 1 from each node. Spikes 4--6, pendulous, not clustered, excepting frequently apical 2--3 (usually staminate) spikes; the largest 25--70 X 7--11 mm. Longest peduncle exserted by 20--150 mm, scabrid on angles. Apical spikes usually staminate, occasionally androgynecandrous. Staminate spikes 0--1. Pistillate spikes 3--5. <u>Bisexual spikes</u> 0--1. Small accessory spikes not present. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 2,5 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets ovate, 4,5--6,5 X 0,8--1,2 mm, longer and narrower than perigynium, stramineous, wholly glabrous or ciliate distally on margin; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex obtuse or emarginate, awned; awn 2,0--4,2 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium suberect, stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 3--4 mm X 1,5--1,8 mm, narrowly elliptic in cross-section, slightly inflated, mid-brown, or ferruginous with rostrum whitish, base without a layer of corky material, cartilaginous, papillate, with solid papillae, inconspicuously nerved; rostrum Abrupt, 0.3--0.5

mm long, straight, margin not winged, glabrous; rostrum apex truncate. <u>Rhachilla</u> absent from perigynia. <u>Style</u> base straight; stigmas 2. <u>Mature nutlet</u> obovate, not clawed, 1,9 --2,2 X 1,0--1,7 mm, narrowly elliptic in cross-section. fuscous with lighter angles, minutely papillose.

This species flowers and fruits from September to May. The plants grow in full sun, or light shade, in perennially waterlogged marshland, or riparian situations. on clay or loam substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in summer, in the midlands and in montane areas, in northern, eastern and southern Transvaal, Orange Free State, Swaziland, Natal, eastern Cape Province, and Transkei. Map 6. The species is apparently endemic to southern Africa and it is to this that the specific epithet refers.

In his monograph (1909) Kuekenthal indicates that he saw all of the syntypes listed above. Although none of the BM specimens are annotated by him, it seems that he must have et her borrowed the specimens from BM, or visited the herbarium. It seems appropriate therefore to designate the most complete specimen of the various syntypes in BM, as the lectotype. This is Medley Wood s.n. sub HNAA 1690.

<u>C. austro-africana</u> belongs to a large, widely distributed Section (<u>Acutae</u> Fries), which is anomalous within Subgenus <u>Carex</u>. as the species are all bistigmatic, with fruits narrowly elliptic in cross-.ection, whereas the

remainder of the Subgenus is usually tristigmatic with fruits triangular in cross-section. It is not easy to estimate the selective advantage of the distigmatic condition. The perigynia in Section <u>Acutae</u> are generally only slightly inflated; however most species grow in marshland and the fruits are presumably dispersed by water. It is conceivable that the biconvex fruits float more efficiently than the triangular fruits of the remainder of the Subgenus, which generally require highly inflated perigynia to achieve short-range dispersal.

The very long, scabrid awns on the bracts of the pistillate spikelets distinguish <u>C. austro-africana</u> from all the Tropical African species of Section <u>Acutae</u>. especially <u>C. rhodesiaca</u> Nelmes (the isotype was examined in PRE). Interestingly, when Raymond (1964) raised <u>C. austro-africana</u> to species level he cited <u>Robinson 3340</u>. which is actually <u>C. rhodesiaca</u> according to Podlech (p. 122, 1961).

SELECTED CITATIONS

TRANSVAAL.---2229 (Waterpoort): Soutpansberg district, Soutpansberg, Wyllies Poort (-DD) <u>Hafstrom & Acocks 102</u> (S).

---2329 (Pietersburg): Pietersburg district, Broederstroom, Woodbush Forest Reserve above Dap Naude Dam, near forester's office (-DD), <u>Crawford 313</u> (PRE). ---2330 (Tzaneen): Soutpansberg district, Tshakoma (-AB),

Obermeyer 1116 (PRE).

---2430 (Pilgrim's Rest): Letaba district, 10 km from Ofcolaco on road to The Downs (-AB), <u>Ellis 2962</u> (PRE); Pilgrim's Rest district, Swadini Nature Reserve, above Blyderivierspoort Dam, along Ohrigstad River (-DB), <u>Retief.</u> <u>Reyneke, Coetzer & Reid 1135</u> (PRE); Pilgrim's Rest (-DD), <u>Rogers 14933</u> (BM).

145

---2527 (Rustenburg): Brits district, Magaliesberg, Jacksonstuin Farm (-DA), <u>Van Vuuren 294</u> (PRE); Tustenburg district, Uitkomst 499 JQ Farm (-DD), <u>Coetzee 841</u> (PRE). ---2528 (Pretoria): Pretoria district, Aapies Poort (-CA), <u>Rehmann 4039</u> (BM).

---2530 (Lydenburg): Belfast district, Dullstroom, near dam (-AC), <u>Strev 3430</u> (PRE); Lydenburg district, Lisabon Forest (-BA), <u>Reid 825</u> (J, PRE); Nelspruit district, Wonderkloof Nature Reserve (-BC), <u>Kluge 2011</u> (PRE); KaNgwane, Songimvelo Nature Reserve, Uitval (-DD), <u>Heymans</u> 115 (PRE).

---2531 (Komatipoort): Barberton (-CC), <u>Thorncroft s.n. sub</u> PRE 15183 (PRE).

---2627 (Potchefstroom): Krugersdorp district, Witpoortjie Kloof (-BB), <u>Moss 15816</u> (K).

---2628 (Johannesburg): Heidelberg district, Suikerbosrand Nature Reserve, Boschfontein (-CA), <u>Bredenkamp 354</u> (PRE). ---2629 (Bethal): Ermelo, Spitskop (-BD), <u>Pott 5227</u> (PRE). ---2630 (Carolina): Ermelo district, Athole Pasture Research Station (-CP), <u>Norval 22</u> (PRE).

---2730 (Vryheid): Wakkerstroom, Martin's Dam (-AC),

Hilliard & Burtt 18517 (NU, PRE); Wakkerstroom district, Oshoek Farm (-AD), <u>Devenish 197</u> (PRE).

O.F.S.---2828 (Bethlehem): Witzieshoek district, Bestursviei (-BD), <u>lanagan 2005</u> (PRE).

---2829 (Harrismith): Harrismith district, Nelson's Kop (-AB), <u>Cooper 909</u> (BOL); Harrismith district, Sterkfontein Dam (-CA), <u>Blom 44</u> (PRE).

SWAZILAND.---2631 (Mbabane): Mbabane district, Mm Aotja Nature Reserve (-AA), <u>Braun 421</u> (PRE); Mbabane district, Poliniane River (-AC, <u>Dlamini s.n. sub NBG 11134</u> (NBG, PRE).

NATAL.---2828 (Bethlehem): Bergville district, Royal Natal National Park, Rugged Glen, near dam (-DB), <u>Browning</u> <u>255</u> (NU, PRE).

---2829 (Harrismith): Klip River district, Van Reenen (-AD), <u>Medje: Wood 6157</u> (BM, BOL, PRE); Bergville district, Oliviershoek Pass (-CA), <u>Thode s.n. sub STEP 3541</u> (STE); Bergville district, Cathedral area, Umlambonja River (-CC), <u>Schelpe \$84</u> (NU).

---2929 (Underberg): Estcourt district, 37 km west of Mooi River at intersection with Kamberg road, at Hlatikulu River (-BA), <u>keid 1368</u> (J, PRE), Mooi River (-BB) <u>Medley Wood</u> <u>4038</u> (BGL, GRA); Mpenfle district, Mulungane Ridge above Carter's Nek (-RC), <u>Halliard & Burtt 17036</u> (NU, PRE); Lions River district, Nottingham Road (-BD), <u>Moll & Mauve 2444</u> (NU, PRE); Underberg district, Sani Pass (-CB), <u>Hilliard &</u> <u>Burtt 17885</u> (NU); Underberg district, Upper Umzimouti River Valley (-CC), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 9367</u> (NU, PRE); Mpendle district, Tillietudlem Farm (-DB), <u>Huntley 383</u> (BM, NU); Polela district, Bulwer north, Deepvale Farm, Long Dam (-DD), <u>Musil 541</u> (NH, PRE).

---2930 (Pietermaritzburg): Lions River district, St. Ives Farm (-AC), <u>Mogg 6427</u> (GRA); Lions River district, near Howick, Shafton Farm (-AD), <u>Hutton 144</u> (BM, PRE); Pietermaritzburg, Town Bush Valley (-CB), <u>Ward 638</u> (NU, PRE).

---3029 (Kokstad): East Griqualand, near Kokstad, Thornham Farm (-CB), <u>Coleman 919</u> (PRE).

LESOTHO.---2828 (Bethlehem): Leribe district, Khanyane (-CC), <u>Dieterlen 860</u> (BM, PRE).

CAPE.---3226 (Fort Beaufort): Cathcart district, Amatole Mts., below Gaikas Kop (-DB), <u>Furness & Phillipson 128</u> (MO).

TRANSKEI.---3228 (Butterworth): Centani (-CB), Pegler 1150 (BM, BOL, K).

CISKEI.---3226 (Fort Beaufort): Katberg (-DA), <u>Hutton</u> <u>s.n.</u> (TCD).

---3227 (Stutterheim): King William's Town district, Maden Dam (-CB), <u>Acocks 9281</u> (BM, PRE). Map 6. (Opposite above): Distribution of <u>Carex austro-</u> <u>africana</u> (Kuekenth.) Raymond in southern Africa.

Map 7. (Opposite below): Distribution of <u>Carex mossii</u> Nelmes in southern Africa.



6. Carex mossii <u>Nelmes</u> in Kew Bulletin 1940: 137 (1341a). Type: Cape, Kogsback, <u>Moss 999</u> (K, holo., --PRE, photo.!).

Probable isotypes: Young s.n. sub Moss 15336 (BM!, J!).
[C. pendula auct. non Huds.: C.B. Cl.: 688 (1894).]
[C. petitiana auctt. non A. Rich.: C.B. Cl.: 306 (1898);
Kuekenth.: 424 (1909); Schoenl.: 69 (1922).]

Plants up to 1,4 m tall, caespitose. Rhizomes very short, 5 mm in diameter. Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). Leaves glaucous, dark green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face simply splitting. Largest basal leaf blades about 485 X 12--16 mm, flat or plicate in cross-section; adaxial surface glabrous; abaxial surface papillate; margins proximally papillate, distally scabrid. Lowest culm leaf sheath mouth convex, membranous; ligule 20 mm high, fuscous, membranous, apex acute or emarginate. Culms triangular in cross-section, 2,5 --4,0 mm in diameter; internodes all of about equal length, exposed; 2 nodes exposed. Inflorescence a raceme of spikes, 280--560 mm long. Basal inflorescence bract leaf-like, not reflexed ...ear base of blade at maturity; sheath 50--225 mm long; blade 185--600 mm long; opposing bracteole tubular, membranous, usually concealed by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence units 1 from each node. Spikes 7--3,

pendulous, not clustered, excepting frequently apical 2--3 (usually staminate) spikes; the largest 120--185 X 5--8 mm. Longest peduncle exserted by 15--100 mm, scabrid on angles. Apical spikes usually staminate, frequently androgynous, occasionally androgynecandrous or gynecandrous or with staminate and pistillate spikelets mixed. Staminate spikes 0--1. Pistillate spikes 0. Bisexual spikes 6--8. Small accessory spikes not present Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 3,5--4,0 mm long. Bracts of mistillate spikelets lanceolate, 4,0--5,5 X 1,0--1,5 mm, longer and narrower than perigynium, golden-brown, with wide hyaline margins, glabrous; car na narrow, 1nerved; apex acute, very shortly awned or muticous; awn 0--0,3 mm long, margin scabrid, or glabrous. <u>Mature perigynium</u> suberect, stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 2,5--3,5 X 1,0--1,5 mm, triangular in cross-section, slightly or not inflated, green or stramineous with rostrum whitish, without a layer of corky material, membranous, glabrous, nerves few (2 or 3) or inconspicious; rostrum abrupt, 0,5--0,6 mm long, straight, margin not winged, glabrous; rostrum apex shallowly bidentate, apical teeth 0,25 mm long. Rhachilla absent from perigynia. Style base slightly bent, or straight; stigmas 3. Mature nutlet obovate or elliptic, narrowly clawed, 1,8---2,0 mm X 1,0--1,2 mm, triangular in cross-section, blackish, or fuscous with lighter angles, glabrous.
This species flowers and fruits from August to May. The plants grow in light or full shade, in perennially waterlogged riparian situations in forest interiors, on clay or loam substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in summer, in the midlands and in montane areas, in northern and eastern Transvaal, Natal, eastern Cape Province, and Transkei. Map 7. Apparently endemic to southern Africa.

The Section to which <u>C. mossii</u> belongs, <u>Maximae</u> Aschers., comprises about eight to ten similar large, robust species with large, pendulous inflorescences. They appear to share similar habitat requirements. The exact relationship between <u>C. mos5ii</u> and the evidently closely related Tropical African species <u>C. bequaertii</u> De Wild. requires investigation. One important difference noted in specimens in K and PRE identified as the latter species is that the bracts of the pistillate spikelets are conspicuously awned, while in <u>C. mossii</u> the bracts are muticous or very shortly awned.

When Nelmes described <u>C. mossii</u> he reported that Transvaal specimens examined had fruits of a different swape to the Cape Province specimens; upon examination of the material in K, the particular Transvaal specimen seen by Nelmes was found to have galled fruits.

Some confusion exists regarding the collector of the holotype. In the original description Nelmes cited it as

Moss 999. collected at Hogsback on 1st January 1927. The holotype (photo, in PRE!) bears a label in the lower righthand corner with this information. In the lower left-hand corner of the sheet, however, is an envelope that evidently contains scraps from this or another sheet. It is labelled, possibly in Nelmes's hand, with "C.E. Moss 15336. Hogsback, 1 Jan. 1927, Leg. Miss E.M. Young". This is the other specimen cited by Nelmes, of which complete specimens are housed in BM and J. Interestingly, according to Moss's register in J, Moss collected his first 2 000 numbers with F.A. Rogers and no Moss 999 exists. Moss & Rogers 999 is Equisetum ramosissimum Desf., and was collected at "Zookmakaar" on 16th November 1917. The register shows that Moss never collected at Hogsback. It is therefore probable that the two specimens cited by Nelmes are part of the same collection.

SELECTED CITATIONS

TRANSVAAL.---2329 (Pietersburg): Pietersburg district, Woodbush Mts (-DD). <u>Moss 15577</u> (K, NU, PRE).

---2430 (Pilgrim's Rest): Pilgrim's Rest district, Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, from hotel to owner's house at first stream (-DC), <u>Kluge 2474</u> (NBG, PRE).

---2531 (Komatipoort): Barberton district, Moodies Estate (-CC), <u>Immercroft s.n. sub PRE 15184</u> (PRE).

NATAL.---2730 (Vryheid): Paulpietersburg district, Pongola Bush Nature Reserve, Stinkwood Falls (-BC), <u>Gien</u>

2432 (PRE).

---2731 (Louwsburg): Ngotshe district, Ngome State Forest, Ntendeka Wilderness Area (-CD), <u>Van Wyk 6990</u> (PRE). ---2828 (Bethlehem): Bergville district, Royal Natal National Park, Mont aux Sources, Fairy Glen (-DB), <u>Schelpe</u> 1495 (NU).

---2829 (Harrismith): Bergville district, Cathedral area, Mlambonja Forest (-CC), <u>Schelpe 205</u> (NU). ---2929 (Underberg): Estcourt district, Giant's Castle Game

Reserve, Forest Walk (-BC), <u>Reid 983</u> (J, PRE). ---2930 (Pietermaritzburg): Lions River district, 32 km north of Howick on Karkloof - Rietvlei road (-AD), <u>Reid 1198</u> (J, PRE).

---3029 (Kokstad): Aifred district, Weza, Ingeli Forest about 4 km from Weza (-DA), <u>Arnold '328</u> (PRE).

CAPE.---3225 (Somerset East): Somerset East district, Boschberg (-DA), <u>MacOwan 1608</u> (BOL, S, Z). ---3226 (Fort Beaufort): Bedford district, Turpin Dam (-CA), <u>Arnold 764</u> (NH, PRE); Cathcart district, Hogsback, Auckland Forest Reserve, near Arboretum (-DB), <u>Reid 1204</u> (J, PRE). ---3227 (Stutterheim): Stutterheim district, Fort Cunynghame

(-AD), <u>Galpin 2475</u> (GRA, K, PRE); Komga (-)B), <u>Flanagan 919</u> (GRA, PRE, Z).

TRANSKEI.---3029 (Kokstad): Sneezewood Plantation (-BC), Strey 9179 (PRE).

---J128 (Umtata): Baziya Mt. (-CB), <u>Baur 443</u> (K); Nquadu, north of Umtata (-DA), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 16320</u> (NU). CISKEI.---3226 (Fort Beaufort): Katberg (-DA), <u>Galpin</u> <u>1741</u> (GRA, PRE); Victoria East district, Fort Beaufort, University of Fort Hare (-DD), <u>Giffen 703</u> (PRE). ---3227 (Stutterheim): Keiskammahoek district, Dontsa Forest 10 miles north-east of Keiskammahoek (-CA), <u>Story 3687</u> (PRE); King William's Town district, Maden Dam (-CB), <u>Acocks</u> <u>9282</u> (BM, RE); Pirie (-CC), <u>Sim 929</u> (NU).

7. Carex aethiopica <u>Schkuhr</u> in Beschreibung und Abbildung der theils bekannten, theils noch nicht beschrieben Arten von Riedgrasern nach eigenen Beobachtungen und vergrosserter Darstellung der kleinsten Theile, Wittenberg 1: 107, t. z fig. 83 (1801); Boott 3: 110, t. 341--343 (1862); Steud.: 285 (1840); Boeck.: 285 (1877); C.B.Cl.: 679 (1894); C.B. Cl.: 308 (1898); Bolus & Wolley-Dod: 356 (1904); Kuekenth.: 654 (1909); Schoenl.: 69 (1922); Levwns: 131 (1950); Bond & Goldblatt: 38 (1984). Type: Cape, without precise locality, <u>Thunberg s.n.</u> (HAL, holo., --PRE, photo.!).

<u>C. iridifolia</u> Kunth: 492 (1837). <u>C. aethiopica</u> Schkuhr var. <u>iridifolia</u> (Kunth) C.B. Cl.: 679 (1894). Type: Cape, Ruigte Vallei, <u>Drège 7398</u> (B. holo.+; P. lecto.!, designated here; K!).

Plants 470--1190 mm tall, caespituse. <u>Rhizomes</u> very short, 3--6 mm in diameter. <u>Shoot scales and basal leaves</u> developing extensive anthocyanin colouration. <u>Leaves</u> slaue dark green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. <u>Basal leaf sheaths</u> folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face tearing into membranous strips. <u>Largest basal leaf blades</u> 800--1150 X 7--12 mm, flat, keeled, or plicate in cross-section; adaxial surface glabrous; abaxial surface papillate; margins proximally glabrous to papillate and distally minutely scabrid to scabrid. <u>Lowest culm leaf</u>: sheath mouth truncate, membranous; ligule stramineous, 1,3--2,5 mm high, membranous, apex acute. Culms tricagular in cross-section, 1,5--3,0 mm in diameter; internodes all of about equal length, exposed; 1--2 nodes exposed. Inflorescence a raceme of spikes, 165--445 mm long. Basal inflorescence bracts leaf-like, not reflexed near base of blade at maturity; sheaths 35--90 mm long; blades 190--580 mm long; opposing bracteole tubular, membranous, usually concealed by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence units 1 from each node. Spikes 4--6, erect, suberect, or pendulous, not clustered, excepting frequently apical 2--3 (usually staminate) spikes; the largest 30--75 X 7--8 mm. Longest peduncle exserted by (17)--130 mm, scabrid on angles, or glabrous. Apical spikes usually staminate. Staminate spikes 1 -- 2. Pistillate spikes 3--5. Bisexual spikes 0. Small accessory spikes not present. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 2,2--6,0 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets ovate, 4--6 X 1,5--3,0 mm, the same length as and narrower than the perigynium, stramineous with light to heavy ferruginous striae and hyaline margins, or wholly ferruginous, glabrous, but ciliate distally on margin; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex acute or emarginate, awned; awn 0,5--1,8 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium suberect, not stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 5,5--6,5 X 1,2--4,0 mm, narrowly elliptic in cross-section, slightly to much inflated, green, or stramineous with ferruginous spots, base without a layer of corky material,

cartilaginous, glabrous, nerves conspicuous, many (more than 10); rostrum tapered, 1,2--1,6 mm long, straight; rostrum margin not winged, glabrous; apex deeply bidentate; apical teeth 0.6--1,0 mm long. <u>Rhachilla</u> sometimes present in perigenia of basal spikelets. <u>Style</u> base twisted; stigmas 3. <u>Mature nutler</u> obovate, not clawed, 2,5--2,8 X 1,2--1,8 mm, triangular in cross-section, fuscous with lighter angles, minutely papillose.

This species flowers and fruits from September to June. The plants grow in light or full shade on wet or muist furest mar ins, on clay or loam substratum. The species occurs in arres receive: rainfall in winter and in all seasons, sear the coast and in the midlands, is southwestern and southern Cape Province. Map 8. Endemic to the Cape Province.

The specific epithet refers to the distribution of the taxon, which was mastakenly thought to be Echiopian. This confusion regarding locality is doubtless why Clarke initially (1894) reduced <u>C. iridifolia</u> to a variety of <u>C.</u> acthiopica, rather than placing it into direct synonymy, as he did in 1898. An annotation by Clarke dated 26th August 1896 of a sheet of <u>Drege 7398</u> in BM, points out that Boott proves (1862) "that the Acthiopica of Schkuhr was founded on this <u>Cane</u> plant. <u>C. simensis</u> Hochst. from Abylsinia has the terminal spike female at top and other differences". It seems likely that an isotype of <u>C. aethiopica</u> exists in the Thunberg herbarium, because microfiche 21960 (seen at PRE), although not annotated, very clearly depicts this species. The holotype of <u>C. iridifolia</u> was probably housed in B (Stafleu & Cowan p. 693, 1979) and has been descroyed, thus the specimen in P is chosen as the lectotype.

One of the characteristics of Section <u>Elatae</u> Kuekenth., to which <u>C. aethiopica</u> belongs, is the cinnamon to reddish anthocyanin colouration on the shoot scales and sheaths of the wasal leaves. In addition to <u>C. aethiopica</u> there are a number of Tropical African species in this section, which, however have very different inflorescence, spikelet and perigynium morphology (Kuekenthal, 1909) and are obviously not very closely related to <u>C. aethiopica</u>.

<u>C. aethiopica</u> has been treated by some authors e.g. Nees (1832)) as synonymous with <u>C. clavata</u> Thunb., but the two taxa are distinguished by many characters, including habitat (forest margin in <u>C. arthiopica</u>, open marsh and in <u>C. clavata</u>). inflorencence morphology (spikes 7 to 4 mm wide and spreading to pendulous in <u>C. aethiopica</u>, spikes 10 to 15 mm wide and erect in <u>C. clavata</u>), and the colour of the basal leaf sheaths (red in <u>C. aethiopica</u>, stramineous in <u>C. clavata</u>). In addition the style base in <u>C. aethiopica</u> is markedly twisted, whereas it is straight to slightly bent in <u>C. clavata</u>. There are several differences in perigynum characters, including a tapered rostrum in <u>C. aethiopica</u> in <u>C.</u>

<u>aethiopica</u> (scabrid in <u>C. clavata</u>). These characters are not easily observed in immature inflorescences, or material in which the bases are not represented; thus misinterpretation of descriptions and keys could easily have occurred.

SELECTED CITATIONS

CAPE.---2318 (Cape Town): Cape Town, Kirstenbosch Botanic Gardens, Skeleton Gorge path, a short distance above Contour P th (-CD), <u>Reid 1127</u> (J, PRE).

---3320 (Montagu): Heidelberg district, Grootvadersbosch State Forest (-DD), <u>Tavlor 1047</u> (NBG).

----3321 (Ladismith): Ladismith district, Waterkloof north of Ladismith (-AD), <u>Geldenhuys 981</u> (PP.E).

---3322 (Oudtshoorn): George district, Outeniqua Mts., Montagu Pass (-CD), <u>Rehmann 58</u> (BM); George district, George - Kn[.]sna old main road at Kaaimans River bridge (-DC), <u>Reid</u> <u>1144</u> (J, PRE); Knysna district, Homtini Pass, near bridge (-DD), <u>Fourcade 4135</u> (BOL, PRE, STE).

----3418 (Simon's Town): Wynberg district, Cape Peninsula, Karbonkelberg (-AB), <u>Compton 17859</u> (NBG, NU). ----3419 (Caledon): Hermanus district, Vogelgat Nature Reserve (-AD), <u>Reid 1130</u> (J, PRE); Bredasdorp district, Groot Hagelkraal --DA), <u>Taylor 10403</u> (PRE, STE). ----3420 (Bredasdorp): Heidelberg district, Grootvadersbos Farm (-BB), <u>Reid 1132</u> (J, PRE).

---3422 (Mossel Bay): Knysna district, Groenvlei fen (-BB), Martin 4500 (K).

----3423 (Knysna): Knysna district, Harkerville Forest east of Enysna (-AA), <u>Huro 2054</u> (PRE, STE); Knysna district, Plettenberg Bay (-AB), <u>Smart 5 n. sub Rogers 26751</u> (PRE); Humansdorp district, Tsitsikamma National Park, at Storms River Mouth (-BB), <u>Liebenberg 7847</u> (PRE).

---3424 (Humansdorp): Humansdorp district, Witelsbos State Forest, Kwaaibrandbos (-AA), <u>Geldenhuys 962</u> (PRE). Map 8. (Opposite above): Distribution of <u>Carex aethiopica</u> Schkuhr in southern Africa.

Map 9. (Opposite below): Distribution of <u>Carex sylvatica</u> Huds. in southern Africa.



8. Carex sylvatica <u>Huds.</u> in Flora Anglica edn 1: 353 (1762); C.B. Cl.: 690 (1894). Type <u>fide</u> N lmes (1942): From Europe, probably lost.

Plants about 470 mm tall, caespitose. Rhizomes very short, 1,5--3,0 mm in diameter. Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). Leaves not glaucous, dark green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face simply splitting. Largest basal leaf blade 450 X 7--9 mm, flat in cross-section; adaxial surface glabrous; abaxial surface glabrous; margins proximally papillate, distally scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth concave, membranous; ligule 5 mm high, stramineous or fuscous, membranous, apex emarginate. Culms triangular in cross-section, 1,5--2,0 mm in diameter; internodes all of about equal length, exposed; 1--2 nodes exposed. Inflorescence a raceme of spikes, 200--330 mm long. Basal inflorescence bract leaf-like, not reflexed near base of blade at maturity; sheath 25--50 mm long; blade 300 mm long; opposing bracteole tubular, membranous, usually concealed by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence units 1 from each node. Spikes 7--8, erect or suberect, not clustered, excepting frequently apical 2--3 (usually staminate) spikes; the largest 35--45 X 6--7 mm. Longest peduncle exserted by 35--70 mm, scabrid on angles. Apical spikes usually staminate. Staminate spikes 1.

Pistillate spikes 6--7. Bisexual spikes 0. Small accessory spikes not present. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 2,2 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets lanceolate, 4--5 X 1,5 mm, the same length as and narrower than the perigynium, hyaline with ferruginous striae, glabrous; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex acute, awned; awn 0,5--1,0 mm long; awn margin scabrid. Mature perigynium suberect, stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 4,5--4,7 X 1,3 mm, triangular with rounded base in cross-section, not inflated, green or golden brown, base without a layer of corky material, membranous, glabrous, nerves few (2 or 3) or inconspicuous; rostrum abrupt, 2 mm long, straight, margin not winged, scabrid; rostrum apex shallowly bidentate, apical teeth 0,2 mm long. Rhachilla abser' from perigynia. Style base straight; stigmas 3. Mature nutlet elliptic, not clawed, 2,3--2,4 X 1,3--1,4 mm, triangular in cross-section, fuscous with lighter angles, glabrous.

In southern Africa this species flowers and fruits from November to May. The plants grow in full shade, in wet or moist riparian situations in forest interiors, on clay or loam substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in summer, in the midlands, in Natal and eastern Cape Province. Map 9. It is apparently fairly recently adventive in southern Africa; it is common and widespread in Europe and Asia Minor, also in North Africa (Algeria), and

is also recorded from North America.

In Britain the common name for this species is "Wood Sedge"; this name and the specific epithet are descriptive of the habitat. The unusual habitat of <u>C. sylvatica</u>. together with the membranous perigynium with a very long rostrum, make the species very distinctive and unlikely to be confused with any other southern African species.

As noted in the nomenclature section above, the type has probably been lost. According to Stafleu and Cowan (p. 354, 1979), Hudson's house and much of his herbarium was destroyed by fire in 1783. The name therefore requires neotypification, but it is felt that the problem is one for European systematists to solve.

SELECTED CITATIONS

NATAL.---2929 (Underberg): Estcourt district, Thabamhlope, about 2 km from White Mountain Resort on Kamberg road (-BA), <u>Reid 1370</u> (J, PRE).

CAPE.---3226 (Fort Beaufort): Cathcart district, Hogsback, Auckland Forest (-DB), <u>Giffen 1586</u> (PRE). 9. Carex burchelliana <u>Boeck</u>. in Linnaea 41: 234 (1877);
C.B. Cl.: 680 (1894); C.B. Cl.: 306 (1898); Kuekenth.: 660
(1909); Schoenl.: 69 (1922). Type: Cape, Hay Division,
Griquatown, <u>Burchell 1911</u> (B, holo.+; K, lecto.!, designated
here, --PRE, photo.!).

<u>C. flavescens</u> Burch.: 467 (1822), <u>nom, nud.</u>; C.B. Cl.: 692 (1894) (as <u>species dubium</u>).

Plants 340--440 mm tall, caespitose. Rhizomes very short, 1,5--2,5 mm in diameter. Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). Leaves not glaucous, mid-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face simply splitting. Largest basal leaf blade 200--210 X 4--5 mm, flat in cross-section; adaxial surface glabrous; abaxial surface scabrid; margins proximally papillate, distally scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth convex, membranous; ligule 2--4 mm high, fuscous, membranous, apex acute. Culms triangular in cross-section, 1,2--i,7 mm in diameter; internodes all of about equal length, exposed; 1 node exposed. Inflorescence a raceme of spikes, 80--440 mm long. Basal inflorescence bract leaf-like, not reflexed near base of blade at maturity; sheaths 15-55 mm long; blades 220 mm long; opposing bracteole tubular, membranous, usually concealed by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence units 1 from each node. Spikes 3--5, erect or suberect, not

clustered, excepting frequently apical 2--3 (usually staminate) spikes; the largest 10--25 X 3--8 mm. Longest peduncle exserted by 8--22 mm, glabrous. Apical spikes usually staminate. Staminate spikes 1--2. Pistillate spikes 1--3. Bisexual spikes 0--3. Smali accessory spikes not present. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 2,0--2,2 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets broadly ovate, 2,5--3,0 X 2,0--2,2 mm, shorter and narrower than perigynium, stramineous, glabrous, but ciliate distally on margin; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex obtuse or emarginate, awned (shortly); awn 0,2--0,4 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium suberect, not stipitate, without z basal callus, rostrate, 3,0--3,5 X 1,6--2,0 mm, triangular in cross-section, much inflated, green, or stramineous with ferruginous spots, without a layer of corky material, cartilaginous, glabrous, nerves conspicuous, many (more than 10); rostrum abrupt, 0,5 mm long, straight; rostrum margin not winged, scabrid; apex shallowly bidentate, apical teeth 0 2 mm long. Rhachilla absent from perigynia. Style base slightly bent, or straight; stigmas 3. Mature nutlet obovate, narrowly clawed, 2,0--2,4 X 1,0--1,4 mm, triangular in cross-section, fuscous with lighter angles, minutely papillose.

This species flowers and fruits from October to December. The plants grow in full sun, in perennially waterlogged marshland, on dolomite-derived substratum. The

species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in summer, in the interior, in western Transvaal and central Cape Province. Map 10. Endemic to southern Africa.

The specific epithet commemorates William Burchell, the first collector of this taxon. <u>C. burchellii</u> was only published in 1877, about 12 years after Burchell's specimens were donated to K, suggesting that Boeckeler's attention was drawn to the new species only after their incorporation in that herbarium. Burchell's duplicates may have been widely distributed, also going to Boeckeler at B (and therefore the holotype has been destroyed). The specimen in K is here designated as the lectotype.

<u>C. burchelliana</u> is unlike any Tropical African species. Clarke (1898) pointed out that it is similar to the European species <u>C. dilut</u> Marsch.-Bieb., but both he and Kuekenchal (p. 660, 1909) list a number of significant differences. These include characters of the perigynium (ovate in <u>C.</u> <u>diluta</u> and ellipsoid in <u>C. burchelliana</u>) and of the nutlet (hardly stipitate in <u>C. diluta</u>. strongly stipitate in <u>C.</u> <u>burchelliana</u>).

SELECTED CITATIONS

0

TRANSVAAL.---2626 (Klerksdorp): Ventersdorp district, Die Oog Van Schoonspruit Farm (-BD), <u>Reid 1115</u> (J, PRE). CAPE.---2823 (Douglas): Postmasburg district,

Danielskuil, southern outskirts on road to Campbell (-BA),

Reid 1121 (J, PRE); Hay district, Griquatown (-CC), <u>Burchell</u> <u>1911</u> (K); Herbert district, Upper Campbell (Campbell) (-DC), <u>Burchell 1831</u> (K).

BOPHUTATSWANA.---2723 (Kuruman): Kuruman district, Cotton End Farm, banks of Matlhwaring River (-AB), <u>Acocks</u> <u>2503</u> (PRE).

Map 10. (Opposite above): Distribution of <u>Carex</u> <u>burchelliana</u> Boeck. in southern Africa.

Map 11. (Upposite below): Distribution of <u>Carex ecklonii</u> Nees in southern Africa.

O

Ó



C

10. Carex eklonii <u>Nees</u> in Linnaea 10: 203 (1836); Kunth: 517 (1837); Steud.: 289 (1840); Kunze: 25, t. 5 (1840); Levyns 151 (1950); Bond & Goldblatt: 38 (1984). Type: Cape, Port Elizabeth dist., Cape Receif nr. Seaview (collector not stated, probably <u>Ecklon & Zeyher</u>).

C. ecklonij Nees var. a in Linnaea 10: 203 (1836).

<u>C. ecklonii</u> Nees var. β: 203 (1836). Type: Swellendam & George dist., <u>Mund s.n.</u> (B, holo.|; S!).

<u>C. extensa</u> Good. var. <u>ecklonii</u> (Nees) Kuekenth.: 667 (1909); Schoenl.: 69 (1922). Type: As for <u>C. ecklonii</u>.

<u>C. extensa</u> Good. var. <u>latifolia</u> Boeck.: 289 (1877), <u>nom.</u> <u>illeg.</u>; C.B. Cl.: 684 (1894). Type: Cape, "Prom. bon. spei", <u>Ecklon & Zeyher 119</u> (B, holo.+).

[<u>C. extensa</u> auctt. non Good.: Boeck.: 289 (1877); C.B. Cl.: 684 (1894); Bolus & Wolley-Dod: 356 (1904).]

Plants 170--710 mm tall, caespitose. <u>Rhizomes</u> very short, 1,5 mm in diameter. <u>Shoot scales and basal leaves</u> not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). <u>Leaves</u> not glaucous, yellow-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. <u>Basal leaf sheaths</u> tubular, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face tearing into membranous strips. <u>Largest basal leaf blade</u> 30--340 X 2,5--4,0 mm, channelled or plicate in cross-section; adaxial surface glabrous; abaxial surface glabrous; margins proximally glabrous, distally minutely scabrid. <u>Lowest culm</u> <u>leaf</u>: sheath mouth concave, membranous; ligule 1 mm high.

fuscous, membranous, apex obtuse or occasionally emarginate. **Culms** triangular in cross-section, 1--2 mm in diameter; internodes all of about equal length, exposed; 0--1 nodes exposed. Inflorescence a raceme of spikes, 20--50 mm long. Basal inflorescence bract leaf-like, sharply reflexed near base of blade at maturity; sheath 0--25 mm long; blade 60--190 mm long; opposing bracteole tubular, membranous, usually concealed by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence units 1 from each node. Spikes 4--5, spreading, clustered; the largest 15--22 X 7--10 mm. Peduncles not exserted, glabrous. Apical spikes usually staminate. Staminate spikes 1. Pistillate spikes (0--)3--4. Bisexual spikes 0--3. Small accessory spikes occasionally present at base of basal pistillate spikes, usually absent. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 2,5 mm long. Bracts of pistilate spikelets ovate, 4,2--5,0 X 1,8--2,2 mm, shorter and narrower than perigynium, ferruginous, glabrous; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex obtuse or emarginate, shortly awned; awn 0,8--2,0 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium suberect, stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 4,5--5,5 X 1,8--2,5 mm, triangular with rounded base in cross-section, much or slightly inflated, green or stramineous with ferruginous spots, base without a layer of corky material, cartilaginous, glabrous, nerves conspicuous, many (more than 10); rostrum abrupt, 0.7--1,2 mm long, straight, margin not winged, glabrous; apex shallowly bidentate, spical teeth 0, .-- č,5 mm long. <u>Rhachilla</u> absent

from perigyria. <u>Style</u> base twisted, slightly bent, or straight; stigmas 3. <u>Mature nutlet</u> oboutty, narrowly clawed, 2,5--3,2 X 1,5--2,0 mm, triangular in .uss-section, fuscous with lighter angles, minutely papillose.

This species flowers and truits from October to April. The plants grow in full sun, in perennially waterlogged marshland. on sandy substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in winter and in all seasons, at sea level, in south-western, southern, and eastern Cape Province. Map 11. Endemic to the Cape Province (?); possibly also from Scotland (Kuekenthal, 1909).

The specific epithet commemorates C.F. Ecklon, who probably, with Zeyher, collected the type specimen. Cape Receif, the type locality, is certainly one of their collecting localities (Gunn & Codd, 1981). Unfortunately no specimen of theirs from this locality has been traced. There is no doubt as to the identity of Nees's species, as his descriptive phrase "<u>spic;s femineis subternis cy'indricis</u> <u>approximatis fastigiat</u> for the specimen was housed in B it has been lost (Stafleu & Cowan p. 706, 1981). Isotypes could be at CGE, but this has not been checked because loan requests were unable to be fulfilled. If no isotype exists, a neotype must be designated. <u>C. ecklonii</u> is evidently closely related to the common European species <u>C. extensa</u> Good., with which it also shares a preference for sea shore habitats. Major differences, as noted by Kuekenthal (1909) are the 3 mm long perigynia and spikes not clustered in <u>C. extensa</u>. The latter species has been reported to occur in southern Africa (Kuekenthal, 1909), but during the present study no specimens of this species have been seen.

SELECTED CITATIONS

CAPE.---3318 (Cape Town): Cape Town, Clifton, Moses' Beach (-CD), <u>Acocks 3726</u> (S).

---3322 (Oudtshoorn): George district, Bo-Langvlei, northern shore (-DC), <u>Reid 1146</u> (J, PRE).

---3326 (Grahamstown): Bathurst district, Kowie (-DB), <u>Simon</u> <u>s.n.</u> (NH).

----3327 (Peddie): East London district, Kidd's Beach (-BA), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 18987</u> (PRE); Bathurst district, Riet River Estuary (-CA), <u>Ward 9285</u> (BUDW, PRE).

----3418 (Simon's Town): Jimon's Town district, Cape Peninsula, Noordhoek Vlei (-AB), <u>Reid 1128</u> (J, PRE); Simon's Town district, Smitswinkel Bay (-AD), <u>Whellan 1750</u> (FRE). ----3419 (Caledon): Hermanus (-AC), <u>Wheilan 1483</u> (K, PRE); Hermanus district, Uilkraals River north bank, 100 m below bridge (-CB), <u>O'Callaghan 1534</u> (STE); Bredasdorp district, Ratelviei (-DA), <u>Reid 1131</u> (J, PRE).

---3421 (Riversdale): Riversdale district, Still Bay strand (-AD), <u>Levyns 9513</u> (BOL).

---3422 (Mossel Bay): Knysna district, Groenvlei fen (-BB), Martin 4548 (K).

---3423 (Knysna): Knysna district, Noetzie (-AA), <u>Phillips 5</u> (GRA). 11. Carex monotropa <u>Nelmes</u> in Kew Bull. 11: 86 (1955a). Type: Lesotho, between Indumeni Dome and Castle Buttress, <u>Killick 1847</u> (K, holo.!; BM!, CPF, PRE!, NU!).

<u>C. oederi</u> Retz. var. <u>cataractae</u> (R. Br.) Kuekenth.: 673 (1909), p.p.; Schoenl.: 69 (1942).

[C. flava auct. non L.: C.B. Cl.: 307 (1898).]

Plants 20--60 mm tall, caespitose (sometimes very loosely caespitose). <u>Rhizomes</u> very short to long, 1,0--1,5 mm in diameter. Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). Leaves not glaucous, mid-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face tearing into membranous strips. Largest basal leaf blade 65--100 X 2,2--3.0 mm, flat or keeled in cross-section; adaxial and abaxial surfaces glabrous; margins proximally papillate, distally scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth concave, membranous; ligule 2 mm high, whitish, membranous, apex obtuse. <u>Sulms</u> triangular in cross-section, 0,1--1,0 mm in diameter, very short, concealed by leaf sheaths; nodes not exposed. Inflorescence a raceme of spikes, 12--20 mm long. Basal inflorescence bracts leaf-like, not reflexed near base of blade at maturity; sheaths 2--4 mm long; blades 15--45 mm long; opposing bracteole tubular, membranous, usually conceased by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence units 1 from each node. Spikes 3--4, spreading, clustered; the

largest 7--9 X 7--5 mm. <u>Peduncles</u> not exserted, glabrous. Apical spikes usually staminate. Staminate spikes 0--1. Pistillate spikes 2--3. Bisexual spikes 0--1. Small accessory spikes not present. Bracts of staminal malkelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 1--2 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets lanceolate, 2,5--3,0 X 1,2 mm, shurter and narrower than the perigynium, yellow and rerruginous, glabrous; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex obtuse or emarginate, awned or muticous, or carina terminating subapically; awn 0--0,2 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium suberect to spreading, not stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 4,0--4,5 mm X 1,2--1,5 mm, elliptic or rotund in cross-section, much inflated, bright yellow, 2layered, without a layer of corky material, herbaceous, glabrous, nerves conspicuous, many (more than 10); rostrum tapered, 1,2--1,8 mm long, straight; margin nct winged, glabrous; apex shallowly bidentate, apical testh (0, 2--)0, 5--O,7 ma long. <u>Rhachilla</u> absent from perigynia. <u>Style</u> base straight; stigmas 3. Mature nutlet obovate, not clawed, 1,5 --1,8 X 1 mm, triangular in cross-section, furgous, minutely papillose.

This species flowers and fruits from December to February. The plants grow in full sun, in seasonally waterlogged marshland, on basaltic substratum. The species ofcurs in an area receiving rainfall in summer, on the alpine plateau in Lesotho, to which it is endemic. Map 12. The specific epithet refers to the isolation of this taxon from other members of the <u>Carex flava</u> "group" (Nelmes. 1955a). In his monograph Kuekenthal (1909) cited a specimen of the southern African taxon (i.e. <u>C. monotropa</u>). along with specimens of taxa from Tasmania, New Zealand and South America, as <u>C. oederi</u> var. <u>cataractae</u>. When Nelmes (1955a) discussed the Scuthern Hemisphere members of this widespread "group", he showed that <u>C. monotropa</u> is clearly related to, although easily distinguished from, the remaining members. They all occupy similar, specialised habitats on highaltitude mountain plateaux.

During summer, shallow temporary pools form in the habitat of <u>C. monotropa</u> (i.e. in the poorly drained basaltic soils). In late summer the plants produce inflorescences just above water level. The instated ruits float and are dispersed by water, being "pl. 3: d" when the water recedes.

SELECTED CITATIONS

LESOTHO.---2828 (Bethlehem): Butha Buthe, Valley No. 1 (-CC), <u>Coetzee 397</u> (NBG); Pela Ts'oeu River (-CD), <u>Jacot</u> <u>Guillarmod 2055</u> (PRE); Mont aux Sources, summit of mt. (-DD), <u>Flanagan 2013</u> (BOL, K, PRE).

---2829 (Harrismith): Cathedral Peak, top of Organ Pipes Pass (-CC), <u>Smook 1075</u> (PRE).

---2929 (Underberg): Between Indumeni Dome and Castle Buttress (-AA), <u>Killick 1847</u> (BM, CPF, K, NU, PRE); Mokhotlong district, near Thabana Ntlenyana (-AD), <u>Coetzee</u> 571 (PRE); On road to Sani Top, 5 km from Kotisephola Pass summit (-CA), <u>Killick 4593</u> (PRE, ROML); Sani Pass, valley towards Hodgson's Peaks (-CB), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 9669</u> (PRE).

9

E

- Map 12. (Opposite above): Distribution of <u>Carex monotropa</u> Nelmes in southern Africa.
- Map 13. (Opposite below): Distribution of <u>Carex cognata</u> Kunth in southern Africa.

C



12. Carex cognata <u>Kurth</u> in Enumeratio Plantarum 2: 502 (1837); Steud.: 287 (1840); Boeck.: 299 (1877): C.B. Cl.: 681 (1894); C.B. Cl.: 308 (1898); Kuekenth.: 697 (1909); Schoenl.: 69 (1922); Levyns: 131 (1950]; Haines & Lye: 383 (1983); Bond & Goldblatt: 38 (1984). <u>C. pseudo-cyperus</u> L. var. <u>cognata</u> (Kunth) Boatt: 141 (1867). Type: Cape, Swellendam and George dist., <u>Mund S.n.</u> (B, holo.+).

<u>C. retrorsa</u> Nees: 204 (1836), <u>nom, illeg</u>, non Schweinitz (1324). Type: As for <u>C. cognata</u>.

<u>C. drakensbergensis</u> C.B. Cl.: 309 (1898). <u>C. cognata</u> Kunth var. <u>drakensbergensis</u> (C.B. Cl.) Kuekenth.: 699 (1909); Schoenl.: 69 (1922), <u>svn. nov.</u> Typa: Kokstad, Vaal Bank Farm, <u>Haygarth s.n. sub Medley Wood 4201</u> (K, lecto.!, designated here; BOL!, NH!).

Syntypes: Orange Free State Drakensberg, near Harrismith, <u>Auchanan 112</u> (K, --PRE, photo.!); Natal, Harrismith, <u>Buchanan 136</u> [not found); Natal, <u>Buchanan 137</u> (not found); Transvaal, Mooi River near Potchefstroom, <u>Nelson 72</u> (K!).

Plants 340--765 mm tall, caespitose (sometimes ve y loosely caespitose). <u>Rhizomes</u> very short to long, 2,5--4,0 mm in diameter. <u>Shoot scales and basal leaves</u> not develop extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). <u>Leaves</u> not glaucous, yellow-green, with conspicuous transverse venation, especially in dry material. <u>Basal leaf sheaths</u> folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face tearing into membranous strips or simply

splitting. Largest basal leaf blade 230--680 X 6--8 mm, flat in cross-section; adaxial and abaxial surfaces scabrid; margins proximally glabrous, distally minutely scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth truncate, or usually concave, membranous; ligule 4 mm high, stramineous, membranous, apex acute or obtuse. Culms sharply triangular in cross-section, 2--3 mm in diameter; ternodes al of about equal length, exposed; 1--2 nodes exposed. <u>Inflorescence</u> a raceme of spikes, 115--195 mm long. Basal Inflorescence bract leaflike, not reflexed near base of blade at maturity; sheath 0 --20 mm long; blade 300--500 mm long; opposing bracteole tubular, membranous, usually concealed by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence mits 1 from each node. Spikes 3--6, erect, suberect, or pendulous, all clustered, or only apical 2--3 (usually staminate) spikes; the largest 20--70 X 7--11 mm. Longest peduncle exserted by 0--65 mm, scabrid on angles. Apical spikes staminate, occasionally androgynecandrous. Staminate spikes 0--2. Pistillate spikes 2--6. Bisexual spikes 0--1. Small accessory spikes not present. Bracts of staminal suikelets not or only slightly Simorphic. Anthers 2,3--2,5 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets ovate-lanceolate, 5-6 mr. X 1,2--1,8 mm, the same length as and narrower than the perigynium, ferruginous, glabrous; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex obtuse or sometimes emarginate, avned; awns 1,2--3,0 mm long, margins scabrid. Mature perigynium spreading, stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 4,0--5,2 X 1,5--2,0 mm, elliptic or rotund

in cross-section, much inflated, stramineous and ferruginous, base without a layer of corky material, cartilaginous, glabrous, nerves conspicuous, many (more than 10); rostrum abrupt, 1,1--2,0 mm long, straight, margin not winged, glabrous; apex deeply bidentate, apical teeth 0,5--1,0 mm long. <u>Rhachilla</u> absent from perigynia. <u>Style</u> base twisted; stigmas 3. <u>Mature nutlet</u> obovate or elliptic, not clawed, 1,7--2,8 X 1,2--1,5 mm, triangular in cross-section, fuscou with lighter angles, minutely papillose.

This species flowers and fruits from October to July. The plants grow in full sun, or light shade, in perennially waterlogged marshland or wet flushes, or in riparian situations, on clay or loam substratum. The species occ rs in areas receiving rainfall in summer, winter, or in all seasons, from sea level to the alpine plateau, in Namibia, Botswana, northern, eastern and central Transvaal, Orange Free State, Swaziland, Natal, Lesotho, south-western and eastern Cape Province, and Transkei. Map 13. It is also fairly widesp ad in East Africa, in Tanzania, Kenya, Zimbabwe and Mozambique.

<u>C. retrorsa</u> Nees (1836) is illegitimate because it is predated by the North American species <u>C. retrorsa</u> Schweinitz (1824). Kunth (1837) published <u>C. cognata</u> as an avowed substitute for <u>C. retrorsa</u> Nees. The specific epithet cognata means "related" but it is uncertain why it was applied to this particular taxon. The holotype has not been traced; it seems likely that it has been destroyed as, according to Stafleu and Cowan (p. 706, 1981) Nees's types of "Glumaceae" were acquired by B in 1855. The designation of a neotype is therefore required.

<u>C. cognata</u> belongs to the very distinctive, widespread Section <u>Pseudo-cypereae</u> Tuckerm., which is characterized by the leaves having conspicuous transverse venation, the long, scabrid-awned bracts of the pistillate spikelets, and the inflated, sharp-toothed perigynia. The relationship of <u>C.</u> <u>cognata</u> to the Tropical African species of this Section requires investigation, especially <u>C. congolensis</u> Turrill and <u>C. pseudo-sphererogyna</u> Nelmes; the former species was reduced to a variety of <u>C. cognata</u> by Haines and Lye (1983), with <u>C. pseudo-sphaerogyna</u> included as a synonym of the variety.

When population studies were undertaken at Hogsback in the eastern Cape Province, individuals conforming to the popular concept of <u>C. drakensbergensis</u> C.B. Cl., that is, with long rhizomes and ferruginous coloured, more-or-less distant, pendulous, secund spikes, were observed growing in open grassland on a streambank. A very short distance downstream individuals of what is evidently the same population were lightly shared by planted <u>Pinus</u> species. These conformed to the popular concept of <u>C. cognata</u>, that is, with short rhizomes, and greenish, clustered, suberect, distichously arranged spikes. The conclusion is that the
differences between these two taxa are entirely habitatrelated, and that <u>C. drakensbergensis</u> cannot be upheld, even as a variety of <u>C. cognata</u>, as was published by Kuekenthal (1909). Additionally, studies of herbarium material have shown that the characters listed above intergrade completely.

The Waterberg, Namibia record (see specimen citation) is surprisingly not mentioned by Podlech in the Prodromus: Einer Flora von Sudwestafrika (1967). It is certainly an isolated locality, but easily explained considering that the long-range dispersal of this species is most probably by means of migrant avian fauna. This locality represents probably the only water source for many kilometres and is likely to e visited by many migrant birds.

SELECTED CITATIONS

NAMIBIA.---2017 (Waterberg): Waterberg, Okozongomuinja (-CA), <u>Dinter 1770</u> (SAM).

BOTSWANA.---1822 (Kangara): Northern district, Okavango River, Duba (Xesabe) Island (-DC), <u>Smith 1066</u> (MO, PRE). ---1823 (Siambisso): Chobe (-BD), <u>Morwe 72</u> (PRE); Northern district, island in Zibadianja Lagoon (-DA), <u>Gibbs Russell</u> <u>3148</u> (MO, PRE).

---1824 (Kackikau): Botswana - Caprivi horder, Linyanti River swamp, Shaile (-AA), <u>Edwards 4391</u> (PRE). ---1922 (Nokoneng): Northern district, Quanqua, Thaoge River bed (-CA), <u>Smith 1531</u> (MO, PRE). ---1923 (Maun): Okavango, Godikwe Island (-AA), <u>Ellery 275</u> (J, PRE).

TRANSVAAL.---2329 (Pietersburg): Pietersburg district, Woodbush (-DD), <u>Wager s.n. sub TRV 23137</u> (PRE). ---2330 (Tzaneen): Letaba district, Duiwelskloof, Westfalia Estate, below Merensky Dam (-CA), <u>Scheepers 763</u> (B, PRE); Letaba district, New Agatha (-CC), <u>MacCallum 625 & 626</u> (GRA, PRE).

---2428 (Nylstroom): W ...rberg district, 3 km west of Nylstroom - Vaalwater road, on road to Loubad (-CB), <u>Reid</u> <u>463</u> (PRE); Warmbaths (-CD), <u>Leendertz s.n. sub TRV 6022</u> (PRE).

---2527 (Rustenburg): Rustenburg district, Rainhill Farm, portion of Denkerhoek, kloof no. 46 (-CA), <u>Rose-Innes 232</u> (J, PRE); Krugersdorp district, Gladysvale Farm (-DD), <u>Rodin</u> <u>3923</u> (PRE).

---2528 (Pretoria): Pretoria, Waterkloof, Ravenal Stream (-CD), Mogg 15902 (PRE).

---2529 (Witbank): Witbank district, Loskop Dam, Renosterhoek (-AD), <u>Theron 1931</u> (PRE).

---2530 (Lydenburg): Be'fast district, Dullstroom, near dam (-AC), <u>Strey 3436</u> (BM); Pilgrim's Rest district, Ceylon Forest Reserve, Hartebeestvlakte (-BA), <u>Deall 2443</u> (PRE); Belfast district, near Tol (-CA), <u>Stent s.n. sub PRE 5613</u> (PRE).

---2627 (Potchefstroom): Carletonville, A. Bailey Nature Reserve (-AD), <u>Van Wyk 229</u> (PRE); Krugersdorp district,

0

W tpoortjie Kloof (-BB), <u>Heatley & Moss sub Moss 2772</u> (J, K); Potchefstroom, Mooi River (-CA), <u>Nelson 72</u> (K). ---2628 (Johannesburg): Johannesburg, Houghton Estate (-AA), <u>Moss 5235</u> (J).

---2630 (Carolina): Ermelo district, Chrissiemeer (-AC), Theron 2403 (PRE).

---2730 (Vryheid): Wakkerstroom (-AC), <u>Beeton 54</u> (PRE); Wakkerstroom district, Oshoek Farm (-AD), <u>Reid 1187</u> (J, PRE).

O.F.S.---2828 (Bethlehem): Bethlehem district, Golden Gate Highlands National Park, at Golden Gate (-BC), Liebenberg 7008 (PRE).

SWAZILAND.---2631 (Mbabane): Mbabane district, Forbes Reef road (-AC), <u>Compton 30266</u> (NBG, PRE).

NATAL.---2732 (Ubombo): Ngwavuma district, Kosi system, Sihadla (-BB), <u>Ward 10050</u> (BUDW); Ubombo district, northeastern St. Lucia Sytem, Pukwini (-DC), <u>Ward 8094</u> (BUDW, NU, PRE).

---2828 (Bethlehem): Bergville district, Royal Natal National Park, Rugged Glen (-DB), <u>Browning 256</u> (NU, PRE). ---2829 (Harrismith): Bergville district, Cathedral Peak Forest Reserve (-CC), <u>Killick 991</u> (NH, NU, PRE). ---2832 (Mtubatuba): Hlabisa district, St. Lucia eastern shores south of Tewate (-AB), <u>Taylor 422</u> (NH); Hlabisa district, Dukuduku East (-AD), <u>Ward 5080</u> (BUDW, PRE): Lower Umfolozi district, Richards Bay (-CC), <u>Ward 716</u> (BUDW, NU). ---2929 (Underberg): Estcourt district, Champagne Castle

0

0

(-AB), <u>Mecbold 14386</u> (B); Estcourt district, Thabamhlope Research Station (-BA), <u>Gordon-Grav 5013</u> (NU); Estcourt district, Broadmoor Farm (-BB), <u>Downing 228</u> (NU); Mooi River district, Highmoor Forest Station, south of Giant's Castle (-BC), <u>Smook 1057</u> (MO, PRE); Underberg district, Cobham Forest Reserve, Sipongweni (-CB), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 13976</u> (NU, PRE); Underberg district, Drakensberg Garden Yotel, path to Rhino Peak (-CC), <u>Goetghebeur 4505</u> (PRE). ---293C (Pietermaritzburg): Durban district, Isipingo Beach (-DD), <u>Hard 1221</u> (BUDW, NU).

---3029 (Kokstad): East Griqualand, Vaal Bank Farm (-CB), Haygarth s.n. sub Medley Wood 4201 (BOL, K, NH).

LESOTHO.---2828 (Bethlehem): Butha Buthe district, Tsehlanyane, Oxbow (-CC), <u>Roberts 5310</u> (PRE); Oxbow, Agricultural Camp (-DC), <u>Williamson 390</u> (K); Butha Buthe district, Namahali Camp B (-DD), <u>Lubke 298</u> (NH, PRE). ---2928 (Marakabei): Little Bokong (-AA), <u>Jacot Guillarmod</u> <u>128</u> (PRE).

----2929 (Underberg): Sehlabathebe National Park, east of administration and research centre (-CC), <u>Hoener 1464</u> (PRE).

CAPE.---3027 (Lady Grey): Barkly East district, Wittebergen, Ben MacDhui (-DB), <u>Galpin 6881</u> (BOL, PRE). ---3028 (Matatiele): Barkly East district, Naudes Nek Pass, 28 km east of Rhodes near top of pass (-CA), <u>Reid 1210</u> (J, PRE).

C

0

---3226 (Fort Beaufort): Cathcart district, Hogsback, Auckland Forest Reserve, near forestry offices (-DB), Reid <u>1205</u> (J PRE). ---3227 (Stutterheim): Cathcart district, Toise River (-AD), <u>Hilmer 521</u> (GRA, PRE).

FOR C.

0

---3418 (Simon's Town): Simon's Town district, Cape Peninsula, Lakeside (-AB), <u>Levyns 7120</u> (B, BOL). ---3423 (Knysna): Knysna (-AA), <u>Martin 4232</u> (K).

TRANSKEI.---3028 (Matatiele): Ongeluks Nek (-AD), Hilliard & Burtt 18689 (NU).

---3129 (Port St. Johns): Port St. Johns (-DA), <u>Wager s.n.</u> sub PRE 39183 (PRE).

--- 3228 (Butterworth): Centani (-CB), Pegler 151 (PRE).

13. Carex acutiformis <u>Ehrh.</u> in Beitrage zur Naturkunde
43 (1789); Boeck.: 289 (1877); C.B.Cl.: 679 (1894);
C.B.Cl.: 307 (1898); Kuckenth.: 733 (1909); Schoenl.: 69
(1922). Type <u>fide</u> Cufod.: 1490 (1971): Europe, "in paludosis
Brunvico-Lunebergensis", <u>Ehrhart s.n.</u> (not seen).

[C. paludosa auct. non Good.: Kunth: 487 (1837).]

Plants 450--800 mm tall, caespitose, with tufts aracted by long rhizomes. Rhizomes very short wi in tufts, long between tufts, 5 mm in diameter. Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). Leaves glaucous, mid-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths folded, old sheaths becoming spongy; inner face splitting into connected fibrillae. Largest basal leaf blade 550 X 5--10 mm, flat or plicate in cross-section; adaxial surface glabrous; abaxial surface papillate; margins proximally glabrous, distally minutely scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth concave, herbaceous: ligule 14 mm high, whitish, stramineous, or fuscous, membranous, apex acute. Culms sharply triangular in cross-section, 2--3 mm in diameter; uppermost internode very long, the lower all moreor-less basal, very short, concealed by leaf sheaths. Inflorescence a raceme of spikas, 130--400 mm long. Basal inflorescence bract leaf-like, not reflexed near base of blade at meturity, not sheathing; blades 140--570 mm long; opposing bracteule tubular, membranous, usually concealed by

bract sheath. <u>Primary inflorescence units</u> l from each node. Spikes 5--7, erect or suberect, not clustered, excepting frequently apical 2--3 (usually staminate) spikes; the largest 300--800 X 4--8 mm. Longest peduncle exserted by C--50 mm, scabrid on angles. Apical spikes usually staminate. Staminate spikes 1--3. P. stillate spikes (1--)3(--4). Bisexual spikes 0--2. Small accessory spikes not present. Bracts of staminate spikelets extremely dimorphic. Anthers 2,5--4,0 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets lanceolate, 3,0--5,5 mm X 0,6--1,2 mm, longer and narrower than perigynium, ferruginous, glabrous, but ciliate distally on margin; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex acuminate or emarginate, awned; awn 1,3--3,0 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium suberect, stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 3--4 X 1,6--2,0 mm, triangular in crosssection, not inflated, greyish green with rostrum whitish, base without a layer of corky material, cartilaginous, papillate, with hollow papillae; nerves conspicuous, many (more than 1); rostrum abrupt, 0,8--1,0 mm long, straight, margin not winged, glabrous; apex shallowly bidentate, apical teeth 0,3 mm long. <u>Rhachilla</u> absent from perigynia. Style base straight; stigmas 3. Mature nutlet obovate, not clawed, $1,7-2,0 \times 1,2--1,5$ mm, triangular in cross-section, yellowish-brown, giabrous

In southern Africa this species flowers and fruits from August to April. The plants grow in full sun, in perennially waterlogged marshland, on dolomite-derived, or clay or loam substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in summer or in all seasons, in the midlands, in montane areas, on the alpine plateau, and in the interior, in southern Transvaal, Orange Free State, Natal, Lesotho, southern and eastern Cape Province, and Transkei. Map 14. It is common and widespread in Europe and Asia, also in North Africa (Algeria) and East Africa (Tanzania); it is also recorded from North America.

In Britain the common name for this species is "Lesser Pond Sedge". The specific epithet probably refers to the shape of the rostrum, although it is not particularly acute when compared with other species. No attempt was made to trace type material because it is felt that the problem is better left to European systematists, but according to Stafleu and Cowan (p. 731, 1976) the holotype is very likely to be in MW, or possibly LE, LINN or UPS.

<u>C. acutiformis</u> is a very distinctive marshland species, with its dark, erect inflorescences. the sessile individual spikes and the sheathless bracts. Other distinctive features are the extremely dimorphic bracts of the staminate spikelets, and the old basal leaf sheaths being markedly spongy due to large air cavities. At a young stage of inflorescence development the species is especially distinctive as the staminate apical spikes are very much shorter and thicker than the immature pistillate spikes. The

species is related to the common European species <u>C. riparia</u> Curt. (which is also recorded from Algeria in North Africa), an altogether stouter species in which the bracts of the staminate spikelets are homomorphic, being scarcely distinguishable from those of the pistillate spikelets (Jermy & Tutin, 1968).

The growth habit of <u>G. acutiformis</u>, although unusual among the southern African species, is in fact fairly common in large marshland species (Bernard, 1990). This growth habit, in which the plants produce both long and short rhizomes, results in a so-called tiller clump.

On one specimen (<u>Devenish 682</u>) the collector reports that the species is unpalatable to livestock, except possibly when the foliage is very young. On the farm the plants are cut for bedding and for waterproofing for the tops of haystacks.

SELECTED CITATIONS

0

TRANSVAAL.---2525 (Mafeking): Marico district, banks of the Matebe River (-BD), <u>Holub 1558</u> (K).

---2527 (Rustenburg): Rustenburg district, Uitkomst 499 JQ Farm (-DD), <u>Coetzce 275</u> (PRE).

---2528 (Pretoria): Near Pretoria (-CA), <u>Moss 2322</u> (J, K); Pretoria, Fountains Valley (-CC), <u>Repton 1102</u> (PRE); Pretoria district, Rietvlei Dam 12 miles south-east of Pretoria (-CD), <u>Codd 3189</u> (BM, PRE). ---2627 (Potchefstroom): Potchefstroom district,

Gerrardminnebronoog Farm (-AC), <u>Reid 1367</u> (J, PRE); Krugersdorp district, Witpoortjie Kloof (-BB), <u>Moss 2325</u> (J); Potchefstroom, University Botanical Garden (natural) (-CA), <u>Ubbink 698</u> (PRE).

---2628 (Johannesburg): Germiston district, Elsburg (-AA), <u>Schlechter 3541</u> (2).

---2730 (Vryheid): Wakkerstroom district, Oshoek Farm (-AD), Devenish 682 (BM, K, PRE).

O.F.S.---2828 (Bethlehem): Bethlehem district, Golden Gate Highland National Park, near Glen Reenen House (-BC), Liebenberg 7319 (K, PRE).

NATAL.---2828 (Bethlehem): Bergville district, Royal Natal National Park, Rugged Glen, below dam (-DB), <u>Browning</u> 245 (NU, PRE).

---2829 (Harrismith): Bergville district, Drakensberg, Cathedral area, Baboon slopes (-CC), <u>Schelpe 871</u> (NH, NU). ---2929 (Underberg): Estcourt district, Champagne Castle (-AB), <u>Meebold 14387</u> (B); Estcourt district, Giant's Castle Game Reserve (-AD), <u>Ward 6965</u> (BUDW, NU, PRE); Estcourt district, Thabamhlope Research Station (-BA), <u>West 827</u> (PRE); Estcourt district, foot of Griffins Hill (-BB), <u>Acocks 10691</u> (PRE); Lions River district, Umgeni Poort Farm (-BD), <u>Moll 1381</u> (NU, PRE); Underberg district, Drakensberg, Umzimkulu River Valley (-CA), <u>Small 8</u> (PRE); Polela district, G'engariff Farm (-DC), <u>Rennie 1347</u> (NU). ---2930 (Pietermaritzburg): Lions River district, near Howick, Shafton Farm (-AD), <u>Hutton 145</u> (BM, GRA); Umvoti

0

0

district, Greytown (-Br <u>Meebold 14391</u> (B). ---3029 (Kokm*md): East Immaland, Kokstad (-CB), <u>Tyson</u> <u>1837</u> (BOL, PRE, SAM).

---3030 (Port Shepstone): Umzinto district, Dumisa Station, Campbellton Farm (-AD), <u>Rudatis s.n. sub STEU 2142</u> (STE).

LESOTHO.---2028 (Bethlehem): Leribe (-CC), <u>Dieterlen 601</u> (SAM).

---2927 (Maseru): Rushman's Pass (-BD), <u>Schmitz 7911</u> (PRE); Likhoele, Ntsana-Talana (-CD), <u>Dieterlen 1158</u> (PRE); Maseru district, Makhaleng - Nyakasoba road, on top of pass (-DB), <u>Jacot Guillarmod 5701</u> (PRE).

---2929 (Underberg): Sehlabettel. National Fark, northern edge of Maal Cof (-CC), <u>Hoener 1627</u> (K, MO, NU, PRE).

CAPE.---3027 (Lady Grey): Barkly East discrict, Witteberg, Bedgelert Farm (-DA), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 14641</u> (NU, PRE); Barkly East district, near New England, Abo Farm (-DC), <u>Joubert 5.1. Syb PKE 19187</u> (PRE).

---3123 (Victoria West): Mur*aysburg (-DD), <u>Tyson 580</u> (GRP). ---3223 (Rietbron): Murraysburg district, Sneeuwberg, Koudeveldg Mt. (-BB), <u>Tyson 242</u> (BOL).

---3225 (Somerset East): Somerset East district, Boschurre Mt. (-DA), <u>MacOwan 1963</u> [K, SAM).

----5226 (Fort Beaufore): Cathcart district, Fairford Farm (-BD¹, <u>Cotterrell 1</u> IGRA); Cathcart district, Amatole Mts., below Gaika's Kop (-DB), <u>Furness 5 Phillipson 86</u> (MO). ----3320 (Montagu): Montagu district, Baden (-CA), <u>Levyns</u> 7936 (BOL).

TRANSKEI.--- 3027 (Lady Grey): Herschel district,

lterkspruit Form (-CB), <u>He. n 163</u> (GRA).

CISKE1.---3227 (Stutterheim): Keiskammahoek distrier, Eciskamma River banks (-CA), <u>Acoc)s 9099</u> (PRZ). Map 14. (Opposite above): Distribution of <u>Carex ergelilermis</u> Ehrh. in southers Africa.

Map 15. (Opposite below): Distribution of <u>Carex clavata</u> Thunb. in southern Africal



14. Carex clavata <u>Thunb.</u> in Prodromus Plantarum
Capensium: 14 (1794); Schkuhr: 55 (1806); Thunb.: 141
(1811); Thunb.: 90 (1823); Nees: 535 (1832); Nees: 204
(1836); Kunth: 495 (1837); Steud.: 287 (1840); Kunze: 67] t.
17 (1840); Boott: 183 (1867); Boeck.: 298 (1877); C.B. C1.:
681 (1894); C.B. C1.: 309 (1898); Bolus & Wolley-Dod: 356
(1904); Kuekenth.: 736 (1909); Schoenl.: 69 (1922); Levyns:
131 (1950); Bond & Goldblatt: 38 (1984). Type: Cape, without
precise locality, <u>Thunberg s.n.</u> (UPS, holo., --PRE,

<u>C. clavata</u> Thunb. var. <u>latifolia</u> Willd.: 267 (1805), <u>nom. superfl.</u> Type: As for <u>C. clavata</u>.

<u>C. clavata</u> Thunb. var. <u>cylindracea</u> Wahlenb.: 151 (1803). Type: Cape, without precise locality, <u>Thunberg s.n.</u> (not seen).

<u>C. clavata</u> Thunb. var. <u>triticea</u> Wahlenb.: 151 (1803). Type: Cultivated in Belgium, <u>Kallstrom s.n.</u> (not seen).

<u>C. clavata</u> Thunb. var. <u>campylostachya</u> Nees: 204 (1836). Type: Cape, Seaview, <u>Ecklon & Zeyher 121</u> (NBG!, PRE!; specimens in BOL!, S! excluded).

<u>C. vesicaria</u> Thunb.: 14 (1794); Thunb.: 342 (1811); Thunb.: 90 (1823), <u>nom. illeg.</u>, non L. (1753). Type: Cape, without precise locality, <u>Thunberg s.n.</u> (UPS, holo., --PRE, microfiche No. 21950!).

<u>C. lutersis</u> Kunth: 487 (1837); Steud.: 292 (1840); C.B. Cl.: 692 (1894) (as <u>species dubium</u>). <u>C. clavata</u> Thunb. forma <u>lutensis</u> (Kurth) Kuekenth.: 737 (1909). Type: Cape, near Paarl Mt., <u>Drège 1563</u> (B, holo.+; P, lecto.!, designated here, --PRE, photo.!; BM!, K!, S!, TCD!).

<u>C. macrocvstis</u> Boeck.: 50 (1888); C.B. Cl.: 687 (1894) (tentatively as syn. of <u>C. clavata</u>). Type: Pramont. bon. Spei, <u>Ecklon & Zevher s.n.</u> (B, holo.+).

<u>C. aethiopica</u> Schkuhr v.r. <u>latispica</u> C.P. Cl.: 308 (1898), <u>svn. nov.</u> (tentative). Syntypes: Cape, Kaffir Drift, <u>Burchell 3869</u> (not found); Cape, Bothas Hill <u>MacOwan 1013</u> (K, --PRE, photo.!; BOL! GRA!, S!, Z!).

[C. aethiopica auct, non Schkuhr: Nees: 536 (1832).]

Plants (410)--1700 mm tall, caespitose. Rhizomes very short, 3--5 mm in diameter. Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). Leaves glaucous, yellow-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face simply splitting. Largest basal leaf blade 300--500 X 6--11 mm, plicate in cross-section; adaxial surface glabrous; abaxial surface papillate; margins proximally papillate, distally scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth concave, membranous; ligule 35 mm high, whitish with ferruginous spots, membranous, apex acute. <u>Culms</u> triangular in crosssection, 1,5--3,0 mm in diameter; internodes all of about equal length, exposed; (0)--2 nodes exposed. Inflorescence comprising a raceme of spikes, 115--650 mm long. Basal inflorescence bract leaf-like, not reflexed near base of

blade at maturity; sheaths 23--90 mm long; blades 110--350 mm long; opposing bracteole tubular, membranoum - ually concealed by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence units 1 from each node. Spikes (3) -- 6, erect or suberect, not clustered, excepting frequently apical 2--3 (usually staminate) spikes; the largest 30--100 X 10--15 mm. Longest peduncle exserted by 0--45 mm, scabrid on angles. Apical spikes usually staminate. Staminate spikes 1--3. Fistillate spikes 1--4. Bisexual spikes 0--3. Small accessory spikes occasionally present at base of basel pisyillate spikes. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 3,0--5,5 mm long. Bracts of pistillate spikelets ovate-lanceolate, 5--6 mm long, 1,9--4,0 mm wide. shorter and narrower than perigynium, stramineous with light to heavy ferruginous striae and hyaline margins, glabrous, but ciliate distally on margin; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex acuminate, or emarginate, awned; awn 0,7-2,0 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perisynium spreading, not stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 6--7 X 2,5--3,0 mm, shallowly triangular in cross-section, much inflated, green, or stramineous with ferruginous spots, base without a layer of corky material, cartilaginous, glabrous; nerves conspicuous, many (more than 10); rostrum abrupt, or sometimes tapered, 1.0--1,5 mm long, straight; rostrum margin not winged, scabrid; rostrum apex deeply bidentate, apical teeth 0,5--1,0 mm long. Rhachilla absent from perigynia. Style base slightly bent, or struight; stigmas 3. <u>Mature outlet</u>

obovate, narrowly clawed, 2,8--3,5 X 1,7--2,5 mm, triangular in cross-section, fuscous with lighter angles, minutely papillose.

This species flowers and fruits from August to January. The plants grow in Jull sun, in perennially waterlogged marshland, cy classer in loam substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in winter and in all seasons, at see level and near the coast, in south-western, southern and eastern Cape Province and Transkei. Map 15. Endemic to the southern coast.

The specific epithet describes the shape of the spikes at a particular stage of development. There is a Thunberg specimen in S that is possibly an isotype of <u>C. clavata</u>, but nome uncertainty exists due to the characteristic lack of information on the specimen. Many holotypes of the synonyms listed above viz. those described by Boeckeler, Kunth and Nees may have been housed in B according to Staflew and Cowan (p. 246, 1976, p. 693, 1979 & p. 706, 1981 respectively) and thus have been destroyed. There is definite evidence relating to the type of <u>C. macrocystis</u>. which was previously housed in **DEM**, according to Boeckeler (1888). The herbarium was donated to B in 1915 (Staflew & Cowan, p. 444, 1981) and has been destroyed. Wahlenberg's holotypes are likely to be in SBT, according to Staflew and Cowan (p. 17, <u>1988</u>). Typification of <u>C. clavata</u> var. <u>campylostachya</u> Nees presents an interesting problem, as labels and specimens of two collections appear to have been mixed. These are <u>Ecklon</u> and <u>Zeyher 121</u> from Sea View near Cape Recife, the type of <u>C. clavata</u> var. <u>campylostachya</u>, and <u>Zeyher 4443</u> From Van Stadensberg, which is undoubtedly <u>C. aethlopica</u>. In some herbaria these labels are definitely attached to the wrong specimens; an indication that this has occurred is provided by a sheet in NBG, which has both specimens mounted on the same sheet, with the original labels attached to the plants to that there is no doubt about their identity. With other duplicates these labels could have become separated from specimens during transit.

201

<u>C. aethiopica var. latispica</u> C.B. Cl. is tentatively placed as a synonym of <u>C. clavata</u>. Unfortunately all of the material seen of <u>MacOwan 1013</u> is very young and mostly incomplete. The spikes are however, short, thick and erect as in <u>C. clavata</u>. but the specimen in S (which has the basal parts present) has quite a large tinge of anthocyanin colouration. This taxon has not been recollected during the present investigation. The possibility exists that it is a hybrid between <u>C. clavata</u> and <u>C. aethiopica</u>. Lectotypification of this name has not been attempted, necause it is necessary to locate and examine the Burchell specimen, primarily to ensure that the name is not based upon two different taxa. <u>C. clavata</u> is probably not closely related to <u>C.</u> <u>aethiopica</u> Schkuhr, but Nees (1832) considered the two species to be synonymous. More recently Clarke's key (1898) utilized inadequate characters to separate the two species and has caused confusion, although the habitats differ (<u>C.</u> <u>clavata</u> prefers open marshland and <u>C. aethiopica</u> forest margins) and <u>C. clavata</u> does not develop anthocyanin colouration of the leaf steath bases. Other important differences in inflorescence and perigynium characters (see discussion under <u>C. aethiopica</u>) serve to distinguish the two species.

SELECTED CITATIONS

CAPE.---3218 (Clanwilliam): Clanwilliam district, Bergvalley (-DA), <u>Ecklon & Zeyher 120</u> (MO, PRE). ---3227 (Stutterheim): King William's Town district, 4 miles west of King William's Town, Orange Grove Farm (-CD), <u>Hilner</u> 131 (GRA, PRE); Komga district, near Komga (-DB), <u>Flanagan</u> 1007 (BOL, GRA, PRE).

----3228 (Butterworth): Komga district, Kei Mouth (-CB), Arnold 554 (PRE).

---3318 (Cape Town): Malmesbury district, foot of Mamre Hills (-AD), <u>Henderson 1857</u> (NBG); Malmesbury district, Groene Kloof (Mamre) (-CB), <u>Drège 1583</u> (K, P, S); Cape Town, Bishopscourt (-CD), <u>Pillans 10880</u> (MO); Paarl district. Paarl Mts. (-DB) <u>Drège 1563</u> (BM, K, T, S, TCD); Bellville district, Sarepta (-DC), <u>Acocks 1051</u> (TS; Stellenbosch district, Idas Valley (-DD), <u>Parker 4355</u> (BOL, MO, NBG). ---3322 (Oudtshoorn): George district, above eastern arm of Swartvlei (-DD), <u>Reid 1147</u> (J, PRE).

---3324 (Steytlerville): Humansdorp district, station 9 miles from Humansaorp on Hankey road (-DD), <u>Fourcade 4902</u> (BOL, STE).

---3325 (Pmft Elizabeth): Port Elizabeth district, Kraggakamma Farm (-CD), Ecklon s.n. (S); Port Elizabeth, on road to Walmer at robot (-DC), Arnold 641 (PRE). ----3326 (Grahamstown): Albany district, Brakkloof Farm (-BA), White 127 (GRA); Albany district, Blaauwkrantz (-BC), Hilner 73 (GRA); Bathurst district, Martindale (-BD), Salisbury s.n. (GRA); Alexandria district, De Kol, Longvale (-CB), Gant & Gant 38 (GRA); Bathurst district, at the source of the Kasuga River (-DA), Burchell 3904 (K). ---3327 (Peddie): East London district, 11 miles west of East London, Overton Farm (-BB), Hilner 172 (GRA, PRE); Bathurst district, coast between Kleinemonde and Fish Rivers (-CA), MacGwan 1349 (BOL).

----3418 (Simon's Town): Simon's Town district, Cape Peninsula, Noordhoek Vlei in vicinity of new shopping complex (-AB), <u>Reid 1129</u> (J, PRE); Simon's Town district, Cape of Good Hope Nature Reserve, near Brightwater (-AD), <u>Sniiman 389</u> (NBG, PRE); Hottentot's Holland Mts. (-BB), <u>Hafstrom & Lindeberg s.n.</u> (S); Caledon district, Rooi Els (-BD), <u>Compton 17517</u> (NBG).

----3419 (Caledon): Hermanus district, Rietfontein, Westcliff

(-AC), <u>Williams 753</u> (MO); Caledon district, Mossel River shore (-AD), <u>Compton 23626</u> (NBG); Hermanus district, Gansbaai, Baviaansfontein Farm (-CB), <u>Stokoe 8101</u> (BOL, PRE); Bredasdorp district, Elim (-DB), <u>Schlechter 9665</u> (BM, MO, PRE, S, Z).

---3420 (Bredasdorp): Swellendam district, below Hamerkop on road to Cape Infanta (-BC), <u>Levyns 8390</u> (BOL); Bredasdorp district, The Poort (-CA), <u>Acocks 2528</u> (S). ---3421 (Riversdale): Riversdale district, Sti.1 Bay, Riethuiskraal Farm (-AD), <u>Bohnen 4853</u> (PRE, STE). ---3423 (Knysna): Knysna Heads West (-AA), <u>Schoenland 3380</u>

(GRA, PRE).

---3424 (Humansdorp): Humansdorp district, Witte Els Bosch, sea shore (-AA), <u>Fourcade 4895</u> (BOL); Humansdorp district, Slang River (-BA), <u>Fourcade 1832</u> (BOL); Humansdorp (-BE), <u>Galpin 4843</u> (GRA, PRE).

----3425 Port Elizabeth): Port Elizabeth district, near Sea View at Cape Receif (-BA), <u>Ecklon & Zeyher 912</u> (S).

TRANSKEI.---3129 (Port St. Johns): Port St. Johns (-DA), Moss 5525 (J).

---3228 (Butterworth): Centani district, Qolora Mouth (-CB), <u>Wager s.n.</u> (NH); Centani district, Kobongaba (-DA), <u>Taylor</u> <u>3566</u> (NBG).

CISKEI.---3227 (Stutterheim): King William's Town district, Pirie (-CC), <u>Sim 928</u> (NU). 15. Carex subinflata <u>Nelmes</u> in Kew Bull. 1940: 270 (1941c). Type: Cape, Barkly East, Doodman's Krans, <u>Gaipin</u> <u>6882</u> (K, holo., --PRE, photo.!; BOL', GRA!, NH!, PRE!).

<u>C. clavata</u> auctt. non Thunb.: C.B. Cl.: 681 (1894); C.B. Cl.: 309 (1898); Kuekenth.: 736 (1909), p.p.

Plants 285--900 mm tall, caespitose. Rhizomes very short, 2,5--3,0 mm in diameter. Shoot scales and basal leaves not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). Leaves glaucous, mid-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. Basal leaf sheaths folded, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face tearing into membranous strips. Largest basal leaf blade 220 X 6--10 mm, flat cr plicate in cross-section; adaxial surface glabrous; "haxial surface papillate; margins proximally papillate, distally scabrid. Lowest culm leaf: sheath mouth concave, membranous; ligule 35(--45) mm high, whitish with ferruginous spots, membranous, apex acute. Culms triangular in cross-section, 1,5--2,0 mm in diameter; internodes all of about equal length, exposed; 2--3 nodes exposed. Inflorescence a raceme of spikes, 65--110 mm long. Basal inflorescence bract leaf-like, not reflexed near base of Slade at maturity; sheaths 15--25 mm long; blades 60--165 mm long; opposing bracteole tubular, membranous, usually concealed by bract sheath. Primary inflorescence units 1 from each node. Spikes 4--6, erect or suberect, not clustered, excepting frequently apical 2--3 (usually

staminate) spikes; the largest 20--40 X 9--11 : m. Longest peduncle exserted by 0--23 mm, scabrid on angles. Apical spikes usually staminate. Staminate spikes 1--2. Pistillate spikes 3--5. Bisexual spikes 0--2. Small accessory spikes occasionally present at base of basal pistillate spikes. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Anthers 2,5--3,2 mm long. Bracts of pillate spikelets broadly ovate, 3,5--5,0 X 1,5--2,5 mm, shorter and narrower than 🐔 perigynium, ferruginous, glabrous; carina broad, 3-nerved; apex usually emarginate, shortly awned; awn 0,5--1,0 mm long, margin scabrid. Mature perigynium spreading (usually), or reflexed, stipitate, without a basal callus, rostrate, 4--6 X 1,2--2,5 mm, elliptic or rotund in cross-section, much inflated ("hump-backed"), green, or tramineous, with or without ferruginous spots, base without a layer of corky material, cartilaginous, glabrous, nerves conspicuous, many (more than 10); rostrum abrupt, 1,0--1,2 💵 iong, straight, margin not winged, glabrous; rostrum apex shallowly bidentate, apical teeth 0,3--0,6 mm lung. Rhachilla absent from perigynia. Style base slightly bent, or straight; stigmas 3. Mature nutlet chovate, not clawed, 2,2--2,8 X 1,2--1,8 mm, triangular in cross-section, fuscous with lighter angles, minutely papillose.

This species flowers and fruits from November to January. The plants grow in full sun, in seasonally waterlogged wet flushes, or riparian situations, on basaltic

substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in summer, in the midlands, montane areas and on the alpine plateau, in Natal, Lesotho, and eastern Cape Province. Map 16. Endemic to this region.

The specific epithet describes the inflated condition of the perigynia. (The epithet "inflata" was pre-empted by \underline{C} . <u>inflata</u> Huds. (1762) (= <u>C. vesicaria</u> L.).)

<u>C. subinflata</u> is a very distinctive species, with its short, suberect spikes and short, ferruginous bracts subtending the pistillate spikelets, which contrast with the greenish, inflated ("hump-backed") perigynia. It is possibly related, although not closely, to <u>C. clavata</u> Thunb., with which it shares the character states of glaucous, papillate leaves, and small accessory spikes som times being present at the base of the basal pictillate spikes. It is however, a smaller species in all respects and has a very different habitat from that of <u>C. clavata</u>. The shape and texture of the perigynia are also markedly different.

SELECTED CITATIONS

NATAL.---2929 (Underberg): Estcourt district, Bushmans River Valley near Estcourt (-BB), <u>Acocks 9976</u> (NH, PRE). ---2930 (Pietermaritzburg): Umvoti district, near Graytown (-BA), <u>Buchanar 167</u> (K).

LESOTHO.---2828 (Bethlehem): Leribe district, Malaoaneng (-CC), <u>Dieterlen 1234</u> (NBG, PRE); Near Oxbow Lodge, 1 km

past on Mokhotlong road (-DC), <u>Roux 1321</u> (NBG, PRE); Butha Buthe district Namahali Camp B (-DD), <u>Lubke 299</u> (PRE). ---2927 (Maseru): Maseru district, Bushman's Pass (-BD), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 12125</u> (NU).

---2928 (Marakabei): Grange River Valley, 26 km from Taung, between Mashai and Sehonghong (-DB), <u>Killick 4299</u> (PRE). ---2929 (Underberg): Mokhoclong (-AC), <u>Compton 21549</u> (NBG); Bushmans Nek Pass near Underberg (-CC), <u>Werdermann &</u> Oberdieck 1543 (B, PRE).

CAPE.---3027 (Lady Grey): Barkly East district, Ben MacDhui (-DB), <u>Hilliard & Burtt 16512</u> (NU). ---3028 (Matatiele): Barkly East district, 8 km from Naudes Nek Pass on track to police post and Ben MacDhui (-CA), <u>Reid</u> 1212 (J, PRL).

TRANSKEI.---3027 (Lady Grey): Herschel district, Sterkspruit Farm (-CB), <u>Mapburn 292</u> (GRA). ----3028 (Matatiele): Ongeluks Nek (-AD) <u>Hilliard & Burtt</u> <u>18688</u> (FRE, S).

Map 16. (Opposite above): Distribution of <u>Carex subinflata</u> Nelmes in southern Africa (dots). The open circles represent possible incorrect localities.

Map 17. (Opposite below): Distribution of <u>Carex sp. nov.</u> in southern Africa.



16. Carex sp. nov.

Type: Cape, Calvinia district, in vicinity of FM tower on top of Hantamsberg, Van Rhynshoek farm, <u>Reid 1337</u> (PRE, nolo.; J, iso.).

Carex acocksii C. Reid Sp. nov. ad subgeneris Primocaricis Kuekenth. sectioni Petraeae Lang pertimentes C. filifolio Nutt. similis sed culmis ca. 460 mm (non 100--300 mm) altis et perigynic erostrato complanato 4 mm longo 2 mm lato haud inflato, glabro praeter trichomata pauca brevia conica versus apicem (non rostrato trigono 3 mm longo 1.6 mm lato inflato scabro) differt.

Plants about 460 mm tall (at flowering and fruiting time), caespitose. <u>Rhizomes</u> very short, 2,5--3,0 mm in diameter. <u>Shoot scales and basal leaves</u> not developing extensive anthocyanin colouration (or sometimes small patches). <u>Leaves</u> not glaucous, mid-green, usually without conspicuous transverse venation. <u>Basal leaf sheaths</u> tubular, old sheaths not becoming spongy; inner face tearing into membranous strips. <u>Largest basal leaf blade</u> 220 X 0,75 mm, channelled in cross-section; adaxial and abaxial surfaces glabrous; margins proximally glabrous. distally minutely scabrid. <u>Lowest culm leaf</u>: sheath mouth concave, membranous; ligule 1 mm high, fuscous, membranous, apex obtuse. <u>Culms</u> terete in cross-section, 0,8--1,2 mm in diameter; uppermost intermode very long. the lower all more-or-less basal, very short, concealed by leaf sheaths. Inflorescence unispicate, androgynous, 14--28 mm long; staminate part 2 mm in diameter, pistillate part 7 mm in diameter Basal inflorescence bract glume-like, not sheathing; blade 6--25 mm long. Bracts of staminate spikelets not or only slightly dimorphic. Bracts of pistillate spikelets obovate, 6 X 3,2 mm, longer and wider than the perigynium, golden-brown, with wide hyaline margins, glabrous; carina narrow, 1-nerved; apex cuspidate, awned or muticous; awn 0--0,5 mm long, margin sparsely scabrid. Mature perigynium superect, not stipitate, without a basal callus, erostrate, 4 X 2 mm, narrowly elliptic in cross-section, not inflated, hyaline and golden brown, base without a layer of corky material, membranous, mainly glabrous, with a few short conical hairs near the distal end, nerves few (2 or 3) or inconspicuous. Rhachilla always present, adaxial to nutlet; rhachilla a large, flattened structure, with scabrid margins and obtuse apex. Style base straight; stigmas 3. Mature nutlet elliptic, not clawed, 4 X 2 mm, shallowly triangular in cross-section, yellowish-brown, glabrous.

This species flowers and fruits from October to November. The plants grow in light shade, in seasonally waterlogged situations, under sclerophyllous shrubs, on dolerite-derived substratum. The species occurs in areas receiving rainfall in winter, in the interior, in northwestern Cape Province. Map 17. Endemic to this region.

This new species is apparently the sole representative of Subgenus <u>Primocarex</u> in souther, Africa. It is currently known from only one locality (the Hantamsberg plateau near Calvinia), but should be searched for in similar habitats on nearby mountains. The culms appear to elongate subsequent to flowering, pushing up through the sclerophyllous shrubs under which they grow, presumably to aid dispersal of the fruits. These are possibly not water-dispersed, as the perigynia are not inflated.

This species is possibly most closely related to the American species <u>C. filifolia</u> Nutt., differing mainly in characters of the perigynium (in <u>C. filifolia</u> it is shortly rostrate, trigonous, 3 X 1,6 mm, somewhat inflated and heabrid; in the new species it is erostrate, flattened, 4 X 2 mm, not inflated and glabrous except for a few short conical hairs towards the apex). The relationship between these two species is difficult to explain as no other species of Section Petraeae is known to occur in Africa. Two members of the same Subgenus with similar overall morphology occur in Tropical Africa, <u>C. monostachya</u> A. Rich, in Ethiopia, Tanzania and Kenya, and <u>C. runssorgensis</u> K. Schum. in Uganda, Kenya and Zaire. They grow in alpine bogs and are very large plants, the latter especially producing very large "stilted" tussocks. It is proposed to name the species in honour of J.P.H. Acocks, the first collector cf the taxon.

SPECIMEN CITATION

CAPE.---Ill9 (Calvinia): Calvinia district, Hantam Mts., flat dolerite top, in watercourse (-BD), <u>Acocks 18618</u> (PRE).

- 1.2 -

D. EXCLUDED TAXA

<u>Carex bisexualis</u> C.B. Cl.: 302 (1898) = <u>Schoencxiphium</u> <u>ecklonii</u> Nees var. <u>unisexuale</u> Kuellanth.: 33 (1909).

<u>Carex bolusii</u> C.B. Cl.: 304 (1898) = <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> <u>sparte m</u> (Wahlenb.) C.B. Cl., according to Kukkonen: 823 (1903).

<u>Carex buchananii</u> (C.B. Cl.) C.B. Cl.: 305 (1898) -<u>Schoenoxiphium rufum</u> Nees, according to Kukkonen: 822 (1983).

<u>Carex capeusis</u> Thunb.: 14 (1794) = <u>Schoenoxiphium rufum</u> Nees, according to C.B. Cl.: 298 (1898).

<u>Carex capensis</u> Schkuhr: 39 t. Bbbb fig. 183 (1806) = <u>Schoenoxiphium ecklonii</u> Nees var. <u>unisexuale</u> Kuekenth.: 33 (1909).

<u>Carex dregeana</u> Kunth: 511 (1837) = <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> <u>sparteum</u> (Wahlenb.) C.B. Cl.: Kuekenthal placed it in <u>synonymy</u> under <u>Schoenorialium kunthianum</u> <u>Euekenth.</u>: 31 (109) and Kukkonen: 823 (1983) reduced the latter to a <u>synonym</u> of <u>S. sparteum</u>. <u>Carex dregeana</u> Kunth var. <u>major</u> C.B. Cl.: 303 (1898) = <u>Schoenoxiphium sparteum</u> (Wahlenb.) C.B. Cl. (same reason as for <u>C. dregeana</u>).

<u>Carex esenbeckiana</u> Boeck.: 103 (1876) = <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> <u>lehmannii</u> (Nees) Steud.: Kuckenthal placed it in synonymy under <u>Schoenoxiphium sparteum</u> (Wahlenb.) C.B. Cl. var, <u>lehmannii</u> (Nees) Kuckenth.: 32 (1909) and Kukkonen treated the latter at specific level: 823 (1983).

<u>Carex esenbeckiana</u> Boeck. var. <u>elongata</u> Boeck.: 371 (1876) = <u>Schoenoxiphium sparteum</u> (Wahlenb.) C.B. Cl., according to Kuekenth.: 31 (1909).

Carex indica Schkuhr: 37 (1801), non L. (1771) -Schoenoxiphium sparteum (Wahlenb.) C.E. Cl., according to Kuekenth.: 31 (1909).

<u>Carex killickii</u> Nelmes: 89 (1955b). Type: Lesotho. between Indumeni Dome and Castle Buttress, <u>Killick 1848</u> (K, holo.!; CPF, NU!, PRE!). This = a <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> species. <u>Fide</u> Kukkonen (pers. comm.).

<u>Carex lanceus</u> (Thunb.) Baill.: 341 (1893) -<u>Schoenoxiphium lanceum</u> (Thunb.) Kuekenth.: 30 (1909). <u>Carex poiretii</u> Gm-1.: 140 (1791) = <u>Fuirena pubescens</u> (Poir.) Kunth, according to Kuekenth.: 765 (1909).

<u>Carex pubescens</u> Poir.: 254 (1789) = <u>Fuirena pubescens</u> (Poir.) Kunth, according to Kuekenth.: 765 (1909).

<u>Carex ramosa</u> Schkuhr ms., noted by Nees: 533 (1832) and recorded in Kuekenthal as <u>C. ramosa</u> Eckl. ex Nees = <u>Schoenoxiphium lanceum</u> (Thunb.) Kuekenth.: 30 (1909).

<u>Carex reflexa</u> Dietr. ms., noted on some Ecklon and Zeyher sheets, and recorded in Index Kewensis as <u>C. reflexa</u> Dietr. ex Kunth = <u>C. glowerabilis</u> Krecz.

<u>Carex rufa</u> (Nees) Baill.: 340 (1893) = <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> <u>rufum</u> Nees, according to Kuekenth.: 30 (1909).

<u>Carex schimperiana</u> Boeck.: 373 (1876) = <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> <u>sparteum</u> (Wahlenb.) C.B. Cl., according to Kukkonen: 822 (1983).

<u>Carex spartea</u> Wahlenb.: 149 (1803) = <u>Schoenoxiphiam</u> <u>sparteum</u> (Wahlenb.) C.B. Cl., according to Kuekenth. 31 (1909). <u>Carex sprengelii</u> (Nees) Boeck.: 371 (1876) = <u>Schcenoxiptium sparteum</u> (Wahlenb.) C.B. Cl., cording to Kuekenth.: 31 (1909).

<u>Carex uhligii</u> K. Schum. ex C.B. Cl.: 73 (1908) = <u>Schoenoxiphium lehmannii</u> (Nees) Steud. according to Kukkonen: 823 (1983).

<u>Carex zevheri</u> C.B. Cl.: 303 (1898) = <u>Schoenoxiphium</u> <u>ecklonii</u> Nees, ac_ording to Kuekentu.: 32 (1909).
Author Reid C Name of thesis Systematics of the Southern African species of Carex L (Cyperaceae) 1991

PUBLISHER:

University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg ©2013

LEGAL NOTICES:

Copyright Notice: All materials on the University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg Library website are protected by South African copyright law and may not be distributed, transmitted, displayed, or otherwise published in any format, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

Disclaimer and Terms of Use: Provided that you maintain all copyright and other notices contained therein, you may download material (one machine readable copy and one print copy per page) for your personal and/or educational non-commercial use only.

The University of the Witwatersrand, Johannesburg, is not responsible for any errors or omissions and excludes any and all liability for any errors in or omissions from the information on the Library website.